

Confidential  
War Diary  
— of —

4<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion

3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> October to 31<sup>st</sup> October 1915

Volume 1.....

2 ✓

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 31st October, 1915.

Volume 1.

Diary Text

2 Pages.

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices					
			<p>After four months' training in England final appointments of officers, prior to proceeding Overseas, were made as follows:-</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>Headquarters</u></p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>Lieut. Col. Geo. S. Osmundie Major B. McLennan Capt. P. C. Horsworthy Hon. Major R. Bruce Taylor Hon. Capt. A. A. Mackay Hon. Capt. H. B. Mac Dougall Hon. Capt. J. K. Beveridge Lieut. D. A. Bethune</p> </td> <td style="width: 50%; vertical-align: top;"> <p>Officer Commanding. Second in Command. Adjutant Chaplain Medical Officer Paymaster Quartermaster Transport Officer</p> </td> </tr> </table> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p><u>A Company:</u> Major H. V. Walker Capt. K. C. Strachan Lieut. W. A. Graffey Lieut. J. A. Mathewson Lieut. M. P. Willcocks Lieut. L. de K. Stephens.</p> </td> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p><u>B Company:</u> Capt. H. Holson Capt. L. H. Curry Lieut. R. L. H. Ewing Lieut. S. C. Black Lieut. J. McNaughton Lieut. S. M. Bosworth</p> </td> <td style="width: 33%; vertical-align: top;"> <p><u>C Company:</u> Major S. E. Coristine Capt. H. Mathewson Lieut. E. D. Morse Lieut. S. B. Finley Lieut. E. V. Evans Lieut. P. E. Richardson</p> </td> </tr> </table> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>D Company:</u> Capt. C. E. Blackader Capt. G. L. Mac Gillivray Lieut. C. Blair Wilson Lieut. A. J. de Lothiniere Lieut. S. J. Mathewson Lieut. H. C. Birks.</p> <p style="text-align: center; font-size: 1.5em; font-family: cursive;">Skinnerworthy Capt Radt</p> <p style="text-align: right; font-size: 1.5em; font-family: cursive;">Robson</p> <p style="text-align: right;">.....Lieut. Col. Commanding 42nd Bn. Canadian Expeditionary Force</p>	<p>Lieut. Col. Geo. S. Osmundie Major B. McLennan Capt. P. C. Horsworthy Hon. Major R. Bruce Taylor Hon. Capt. A. A. Mackay Hon. Capt. H. B. Mac Dougall Hon. Capt. J. K. Beveridge Lieut. D. A. Bethune</p>	<p>Officer Commanding. Second in Command. Adjutant Chaplain Medical Officer Paymaster Quartermaster Transport Officer</p>	<p><u>A Company:</u> Major H. V. Walker Capt. K. C. Strachan Lieut. W. A. Graffey Lieut. J. A. Mathewson Lieut. M. P. Willcocks Lieut. L. de K. Stephens.</p>	<p><u>B Company:</u> Capt. H. Holson Capt. L. H. Curry Lieut. R. L. H. Ewing Lieut. S. C. Black Lieut. J. McNaughton Lieut. S. M. Bosworth</p>	<p><u>C Company:</u> Major S. E. Coristine Capt. H. Mathewson Lieut. E. D. Morse Lieut. S. B. Finley Lieut. E. V. Evans Lieut. P. E. Richardson</p>	
<p>Lieut. Col. Geo. S. Osmundie Major B. McLennan Capt. P. C. Horsworthy Hon. Major R. Bruce Taylor Hon. Capt. A. A. Mackay Hon. Capt. H. B. Mac Dougall Hon. Capt. J. K. Beveridge Lieut. D. A. Bethune</p>	<p>Officer Commanding. Second in Command. Adjutant Chaplain Medical Officer Paymaster Quartermaster Transport Officer</p>								
<p><u>A Company:</u> Major H. V. Walker Capt. K. C. Strachan Lieut. W. A. Graffey Lieut. J. A. Mathewson Lieut. M. P. Willcocks Lieut. L. de K. Stephens.</p>	<p><u>B Company:</u> Capt. H. Holson Capt. L. H. Curry Lieut. R. L. H. Ewing Lieut. S. C. Black Lieut. J. McNaughton Lieut. S. M. Bosworth</p>	<p><u>C Company:</u> Major S. E. Coristine Capt. H. Mathewson Lieut. E. D. Morse Lieut. S. B. Finley Lieut. E. V. Evans Lieut. P. E. Richardson</p>							

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

ORIGINAL.CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendixes
			<u>OCTOBER 1915:</u>	
			<p>The Battalion crossed to France on October 9th; went into billets at PLETRE October 11th; was inspected by General Alderson October 15th; was moved across Belgian Frontier to ALDERSHOT huts October 15th. Here we were attached for training purposes for eight days to the 3rd Brigade, 1st Canadian Division and began sending two platoons daily into the trenches in company with seasoned troops. A working party of 200 men was also supplied daily for work on subsidiary line. On the night of October 18th the Battalion had its first casualty. On the following night when Captain L. H. Curry, second in command of B Company, as well as Captain Hutton Crowley of the 13th Canadian Battalion and an officer of the 10th Battalion were killed by a shell from a trench mortar while on a visit of inspection to trench 134. Captains Crowley and Curry were buried with military honours in ARMENTIERES cemetery on the 21st October.</p>	<p><i>See</i> <i>See</i> <i>See</i></p>
			<p><i>Frost</i> .....Lieut. Col. Commanding 42nd Batta. Canadian Expeditionary Force</p>	



Confidential  
War Diary  
— of —

42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion

3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> November to 30<sup>th</sup> November 1915

Volume ..... 23 .....

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Divn.

from 1st to 30th November, 1915.

Volume 2.

Diary Text

3 Pages.

## WAR DIARY

OF

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Gross heading not required.)

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place Date Hour

Summary of Events and Information

Remarks and references to Appendices

NOVEMBER 1918:

On 2nd November the Battalion moved into billets, huts and tents along the NEUVE EGLISE-ROMERAN Road, the move being made in a downpour of rain. A good deal of wet weather was encountered during the first ten days there and working parties of which we continued supplying a daily quota of 500 men were largely employed, in repairing, draining and digging out trenches which had become flooded, or caved in, the men frequently working in water and mud over their knees.

The condition of the trenches also made it necessary for some parties to march overland to the work assigned to them and they were shelled on several occasions but without casualties. We were equally lucky when NEUVE EGLISE was shelled on November 14th, 15th, 16th and 17th. On the 15th one 5.9 howitzer shell landed in a field about fifty feet in front of Battalion Headquarters and B Company billets giving us a shaking up.

All working parties especially those at night were exposed to considerable danger from stray bullets and the fire of automatic guns and other batteries. In this way we lost Pte G. Johnston killed November 12th, Pte A. S. Marshall killed November 19th and Pte Geo. Cox killed November 21st as well as five others who were admitted to hospital with wounds during this period.

On 22nd November C and D Coys. moved to a location just west of DRANOUTRE; Headquarters details, Machine Gun Section, Transport and A & B Coys following on 24th November, the entire Battalion going under canvas.

During the three weeks we were stationed on the NEUVE EGLISE-ROMERAN ROAD we were reinforced by two drafts from England - in all 25 other ranks - most of whom were our own men whom we had left behind in quarantine or in hospital. The following changes had taken place among the officers:

Lieut. Graffey receiving his promotion to Captain and was appointed 2nd in command of B Company. He was succeeded in command of No. 1 platoon by Lieut. M. F. Willcocks and Lieut. L. C. Black returned to A Company.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendix
			<p><u>NOVEMBER 1915 (Cont).</u></p> <p>Lieut. J. C. Stewart arrived from England on 10th November and on 20th November took command of No. 16 platoon.</p> <p>On 21st November we regretfully said good-bye to our Chaplain, Major R. Bruce Taylor, "D., whose term of enlistment - six months - limited by the leave granted by his congregation had expired. He was succeeded by Major G. W. Wood who reported to us from the 40th Bn. same day.</p> <p>An important change in the appearance of the battalion was made at this time by the adoption of the Balmoral cap for fatigue dress.</p> <p>In our new location we were required to supply only 300 men daily for engineers' working parties half of whom reported to the 3rd Field Company and half to Lieut. Sweeney of the Field Troop, C.G. Canadian Corps, both parties being for work on 2nd line trenches. This forbearance on the part of the authorities was of great assistance giving us a chance to improve our camp and make ourselves comfortable.</p> <p>At this time we also received issues of a second blanket, a pair of woollen mittens, a pair of trews and a fur coat for each man and 35 stoves for the Battalion. Kilts, hose tops and sporrans were called in and sent to Paris to be renovated and stored until Spring. Similar action was taken by the 3rd Canadian (Highland) Brigade.</p> <p>Our four weeks stay in DRAMOUTRE was entirely free from casualties excepting the accidental wounding of Piper McDonald during an inspection of arms.</p> <p>In spite of continued wet weather the men's health improved noticeably. The horses suffered to some extent from having to stand in the open. One unpleasant feature was the mud which became steadily worse each day.</p> <p>Training of regular machine gun section and reserve section detailed at ALDERSHOT was continued. Mr. Birks was appointed Grenade officer on 25th November. After some time spent over materials and pits he was able to take a class of forty for one week's course in bombing and was just beginning with a second class when the formation of a Corps Troops Grenade School was announced in which Mr. Birks and 45 O.R. were incorporated as our Permanent Grenade Section.</p>	<p>See</p> <p>See</p> <p>See</p>



Confidential  
War Diary  
— of —

43<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Battalion

3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> December to 31<sup>st</sup> December 1915

Volume 3.....

2

✓

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 31st December, 1916.

Diary Text

2 Pages

Volume 3.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

ORIGINAL.

CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118.

Place Date Hour

Summary of Events and Information

Remarks and references to Appendices

DECEMBER 1915.

Two events during December which caused us a flutter of excitement but did not materialize into anything more, were;

First: The announcement on December 14th that the R.C.R., P.P.C.L.I., 49th Battalion and ourselves, then termed the Corps Troops Infantry Brigade, would hold KEMMEL DEFENCES in case of an expected attack from the Germans. This honour was transferred to the two C.M.R. Brigades by an order received two days later.

The second was the attack itself, delivered with gas on the YPRES front on Sunday morning, 19th December. It cost us half a day's liberty while we stood by, confined to camp. News was then brought that the wind had changed opportunely and the Germans had not left their trenches, and that most of the artillery fire, which sounded so alarming had been our own guns.

On 12th December General Mercer's appointment to Command the Corps Troops had been announced and on 20th December we received official news of the formation of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade composed of the Royal Canadian Regiment, P. P. C. L. I., 49th Battalion and 42nd Battalion, the Brigade being commanded by Lieut. Col. A. G. Macdonell, D.S.O. formerly commander of Lord Strathcona's Horse.

On 21st December the Battalion moved back across the French Frontier into billets a mile and a half north east of PIETRE, the R.C.R., and 49th having moved on the two days preceding, to the same neighborhood. The P.P.C.L.I. on 19th December were moved up to do digging for 2nd Divn.

The following drafts from England arrived at DRANOUTRE on 29th November, 31 men comprising four of the 42nd whom we had left behind in hospital, 1 from 17th Bn and 26 from 37th Bn. On 13th December a further draft of six men from the 37th Battalion.

There was, however, a more than corresponding reduction owing to Headquarters requiring men for special duties on which we had 51 men at the time of our leaving DRANOUTRE, viz:

Carpenters at Bailleul	6
Military Police in Bailleul	6
Loading party with supply column	21



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and reference to Appendices
			<p><u>DECEMBER 1915 (Cont).</u></p> <p>Guides to Kennel Defences 7            Superintending civilian labour 3            Telegraphists 4            Headquarters stenographer 1            Divisional drying room 1</p> <p>as well as Mr. Birks and 45 O.R. at Grenade School.</p> <p>A course of training with the object of "smartening up" was begun on 22nd December. It consisted of arm, squad, platoon and company drill each morning with an afternoon route march. This was varied by practice with gas helmets and rapid fire practice at rifle pits discovered just north of our billeting area.</p> <p>On 29th December 500 men of the Battalion marched to La Lavretée where a very successful and instructive gas demonstration was held.</p> <p>Shortly after Christmas the formation of the 3rd Canadian Division was announced and a few days later the formation of the 8th Can. Inf. Brigade under Brigadier General V.A.S. Williams. It was announced that this Brigade would be formed by reconstructing the 1st and 2nd C.M.R. Brigades. On 30th December Captains MacGillivray and Crafftey with four N.C.O's proceeded to the 5th and 6th C.M.R. Regiments to assist them with Infantry training, and at the same time four officers and twelve N.C.O's from the 1st C.M.R. Brigade were attached to us for instruction but remained one week only. Captain Crafftey returned to duty with the Battalion on 5th January.</p> <p>Lieuts. P.N. Hopougall and A. Routledge joined us on Jan'y. 4th and 5th respectively, having been transferred from 13th Canadian Battalion</p>	<p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p>
			<p><i>Geo. Hamilton</i></p> <p>Commanding 42nd Batta Canadian Expeditionary Force</p>	

Confidential  
War Diary  
— of —

42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion

3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> January to 31<sup>st</sup> January 1916

Volume #.....

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 31st January, 1916.

Volume 4.

Diary Text

3 Pages.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

ORIGINAL.

CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JANUARY 1916:</u></p> <p>I/Sgt Pritchard and four men, who had been selected from a total of 47 examined, were sent back to the Base as Munition workers on 7th Jany.</p> <p>The 42nd Bn. moved on 7th January from billets near MESTEREN into Divisional Reserve relieving the 1st Canadian Battalion at DRANOUTRE, this being an incident of the relief of the 1st Can. Infantry Brigade by the 7th Can. Infantry Brigade for three weeks.</p> <p>On 8th Jany we took over from the 3rd Can. Bn. front line trenches D-3 to E-4 inclusive. (Map location E.36.a.0.8 to E.36.c.5.6. Belgium &amp; part of France 2nd Edition, B Series Sheet 28 S.W.). During this and two subsequent tours in these trenches we had the 6th Can. Infantry Brigade on our left and the Royal Can. Regt. on our right.</p> <p>The weather throughout our four days tour was fine and mild and we had practically no sickness. The enemy's attitude was quiet and at night work could be heard proceeding in his trenches. Sniping was active, however.</p> <p>No minor operations were undertaken but enemy working parties were continually fired on and dispersed.</p> <p>An unfortunate experience with rifle grenades on 11th January can best be described by quoting our official report to Brigade Headquarters:</p> <p>"Shortly before eight o'clock this morning, the enemy opened rifle grenade fire of twelve or fifteen rifle rounds on trenches 14-A and 15-A. The officer in charge of the latter asked O.C. Mortar Battery to reply and 8 rounds were fired with apparent effect a breach being noticed in front line German trench</p> <p>"After an interval of about twenty five minutes rifle grenade fire was resumed on our right sector. One fell outside dugout in the right of D-4 where the parapet is revetted with corrugated iron which threw the charge into the dugout and the 6 men sleeping there were all wounded. The other men were wounded at various points along D-4 including some of the men carrying out the wounded at the top of communication trench D-4. In all, 8 men were killed and nineteen wounded, four of the latter seriously. Owing to the congestion of telephone line there was some delay in getting artillery retaliation. The battery responded promptly as soon as communication was obtained and only 2 or 3 rifle grenades were fired after the battery opened. Our rifle grenades fired about 70 rounds. The enemy's fire activity extended over a period of about 25' including the lapse of 25 minutes referred to."</p>	<p>Shu</p> <p>Shu</p>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Enter heading not required)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JANUARY 1916 (Cont).</u></p> <p>On the night of 12th January the Battalion moved out of the trenches going into Brigade Reserve. During our four days in Brigade Reserve 20 men received a two days course in bombing; five men were detailed for a two weeks course in machine guns.</p> <p>A beginning was made at this time in the organization of a Battalion Secret Coy under Lieut. M.F. Willcocks for patrol and other special duties. On the 16th January we relieved the P.P.C.L.I.</p> <p>Our second tour was even quieter than the first - casualties four men slightly wounded.</p> <p>On 20th January the Battalion went into divisional reserve for four days devoted principally to baths and bombing. An issue of 150 steel helmets was received and distributed during this period.</p> <p>Lieut. P.H. McDougall was appointed on 18th January to command the newly formed Brigade Wiring section.</p> <p>On 24th January we again took over from the P.P.C.L.I. beginning our last tour in this area. The days passed quietly until the afternoon of the 27th when a lively strafe of the enemy trenches on our front with rifle grenades and trench mortars was carried out by ourselves and the R.G.R. on our right, the hour chosen being one in which a bombardment of some houses in their rear was in progress by our artillery.</p> <p>The following morning the enemy retaliated in lively fashion with rifle grenades resulting in six casualties of which three were trifling. The work of Stretcher Bearer Cassidy on this occasion is described by Captain Molson in the following report:-</p> <p>"On the morning of the 29th instant when my company was being heavily shelled by rifle grenades, Stretcher Bearer Cassidy, No. 418,660 behaved with great gallantry and promptness under fire. He dressed wounds under heavy fire after being hit himself and I would like to see his behaviour recognized in some form or other. I cannot commend him too highly."</p> <p>During this last tour we received official advice of the promotion of Lieut. Willcocks and Lieut. Morse to be Captains, their promotions being dated December 9th and 10th respectively.</p>	<p><i>See</i></p>
				<p><i>See</i></p>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>JANUARY (Cont):</u>	
			<p>On the 29th January we came out of the trenches and after one night in Brigade Reserve moved back across the French Frontier into very comfortable billets west of WESTOURE.</p>	
			<p>The efforts of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade during three weeks in 1st Brigade area earned the following letter from Major General Currie, C.B., Commanding 1st Canadian Division:</p>	
			<p>"It gives me a great deal of pleasure to inform you that during the stay of the 7th Infantry Brigade in the 1st Brigade area, they behaved at all times most gallantly. Besides, they did a great deal of very necessary and useful work.</p>	
			<p>"At the time they took over the line, the trenches, owing to the very bad weather, were not in the best of shape but your fellows have made a great difference. I went over the line last Saturday morning and was delighted with what I saw had been done and so expressed myself to Brigadier General Macdonell. I asked him to convey my thanks to all ranks of his Brigade; I know he will, but I want you to know as well how I have appreciated them. They were active in their patrolling, did a lot of wiring, greatly improved the front trenches, worked hard on supporting points and were aggressive always, while I deeply regret their casualties I do not think they were excessive.</p>	
			<p>"Brigadier General Hughes has written me in warm terms of praise of what has been accomplished by Macdonell's Brigade."</p>	
			<p>7th Brigade total casualties during the three weeks were 13 O.R. killed, 2 Officers 69 O.R. wounded, of these 42nd Battalion total casualties were 3 O.R. killed (ptes Matthews, E., Turner, G. and Ward G.) 39 O.R. wounded of whom 3 O.R. died of wounds (ptes "ells, W.B., Belhumeur, J., McKillop, A.).</p>	<i>See</i>
			<i>G. S. Cantie</i>	
			Lieut. Col.	
			Commanding 42nd Batta. Canadian Expeditionary Force.	

Confidential  
War Diary  
— of —

42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion      3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> February to 29<sup>th</sup> February 1916

Volume 5.....  
5

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 29th February, 1916.

Volume 5.

Diary Text 3 Pages.





## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

 or  
 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>FEBRUARY (Cont).</u></p> <p>During two months under command of Brigadier General Macdonell he had made himself respected for his tireless activity and much beloved for his interest in all of us. It can be imagined with what regret we received the news on February 17th that he had been twice wounded that morning by German snipers.</p> <p>His cousin, Colonel A. A. Macdonell, Royal Canadian Regt. as the senior of the Four Battalion Commanders took over the duties of Brigadier, Major Eaton assuming command of the R.C.R. temporarily.</p> <p>On the 19th instant we again went into front line E 1 to F 5 for what proved actually a very uneventful tour although "Gas alerts" were frequent, and on two occasions we "stood to" in readiness for a German attack which did not materialize. Two Germans who exposed themselves while working were accounted for by our sentries in E 1. A fall of snow during this tour gave the landscape a homelike appearance.</p> <p>Our casualties for the four days were one O.A. killed and 6 O.A. wounded of whom two remained on duty.</p> <p>On the 23rd instant we moved into Divisional reserve. On the 24th instant we received the unwelcome news that leave had been stopped.</p> <p>On 28th February we again took over from the Royal Canadian Regt. the E and F trenches for a four days' tour during which there were two incidents of interest. The first was a bombing attack by the enemy on E 1 at 3.10 a.m. 29th February. The enemy party we afterwards learned numbered twenty. They were driven off with the loss of one prisoner and two killed. The prisoner belonged to the 233rd Pioneer Company and the two dead men to the 157th Regiment. Their uniforms and effects including two letters were sent to Brigade Headquarters and they were buried in LINDENHOEK cemetery. Our loss at the moment was NIL but about an hour later Pte McLeod of D Coy. while on listening post was killed by a bomb thrown by a man who we assume was one of the bombing party who became separated and lay in hiding after they fled. Lieut. J.C. Stewart was Officer on duty in E 1 when the attack was made. Lieut. A. Blair Wilson was Commander of Patrol which went out later to recover body of dead German.</p>	See
				See

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Army Form G. 2118

(Envs heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>FEBRUARY (Cont).</u></p> <p>In connection with operation north of YPRES-COMINES CANAL which resulted in the recapture on March 2nd of the International Trench by British Troops as well as the capture of two hundred yards of German trench, the artillery in our rear participated in a bombardment on the afternoon of March 1st and in the early morning of March 2nd. The enemy's reply was noticeably feeble so far as our immediate front was concerned.</p> <p>Casualties for tour - one O.R.killed and one O.R.wounded.</p>	<p><i>See</i></p>
			<p><i>Geo. S. Barrett</i> ..... Lt. Col. Commanding 42nd Batta. Canadian Expeditionary Force</p>	

Confidential  
War Diary  
— of —

43<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Battalion

3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> March to 31<sup>st</sup> March 1916

Volume 6.....

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 31st March, 1916.

Volume 6.

Diary Text

4 Pages.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

# WAR DIARY

ORIGINAL  
CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<u>MARCH 1916,</u>		<u>42nd Battalion C.S.F. (5th Royal Highlanders of Canada)</u>  On the night of March 3rd while we were moving into Brigade Reserve the transport suffered their first casualty - one man and one horse being wounded by shrapnel. Our losses on working parties during five days in Brigade Reserve, March 3rd to March 8th, were greater than during the previous tour of four days in front line trenches, being one man killed and another seriously wounded. On the afternoon of March 7th five shells dropped uncomfortably near Kannel shelters, but did no damage. On the night of March 8th we moved from Kannel Shelters into Divisional Reserve at Leere, and enemy shell fire along the DRAMOUTRE-LOCRE Road again cost us two casualties. This incident On March 9th the Battalion moved from LOCRE into rest billets north east of BERTHEM, and had the good fortune to be left there during ten days of almost perfect weather. On March 14th General P.O.W. Loomis, D.S.O., arrived from England and assumed command of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade. Two drafts reached us during this period of 56 and 47 men respectively, bringing us up to strength. One drawn from the 36th and 39th Reserve Battalions made a particularly favourable impression by the smart, intelligent appearance of the men. On March 16th word reached us of the promotion to a Lieutenantcy of Company Sergeant Major W.H. Thompson, dated March 4th. He was given the appointment of Works Officer. On March 18th the Battalion paraded for inspection by Lieut. General. Sir Edwin Alderson, K.C.B. Commanding the Canadian Corps. He addressed us briefly telling us that the Corps were being sent north to the YPRES Salient where we would meet more strenuous fighting and more uncomfortable conditions than we had been accustomed to, but that he felt confident the Battalion would be ready to meet them.	<u>See</u> <u>See</u> <u>See</u> <u>See</u> <u>See</u> <u>See</u> <u>See</u> <u>See</u>

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Evans heading not required.)

ORIGINAL  
CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118

Sheet No. 2.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>MARCH 1916 (Cont.)</u>	
			On Monday, March 20th, the Battalion moved to POPPERICHHE being billeted in a convent on the Rue de Bueschepo.	
			On the night of March 21st we were taken by train to a point near YPRES where we detrained and marched to front line relieving the 8th Buffs in trenches A.4 and A.10 inclusive.	
			The trenches were in good condition except for shortage of dugout accommodation, especially in the left sector of our front line ( B Company) and at border dugouts where our Reserve Company (C Company) was stationed.	
			The matter of most urgent importance appeared to be to find out the nature and object of a new German trench which was seen to be in course of construction opposite our front and considerably nearer our lines than their old front line. This was essayed on three successive nights by a patrol consisting of Lieut. Ewing, Lieut. Routledge, Sergt Price and Sergt. Jones with covering party of four. The position of the trench was such that it could only be approached under the most favourable conditions of light, as darkness afforded the only cover from view. On the night of March 24th-25th, however, our patrol succeeded in getting across unseen and after watching the trench for ten minutes, sergeant Jones entered it at about 10.30 p.m. He remained in the trench a few minutes and made a short reconnaissance to the right and left for about five yards each way. Voices could be heard on the left some 50 yards away, and on the right about thirty yards away. On leaving, Sergt. Jones found a steel loophole plate set in the parapet which he pulled out and brought away. He described the German trench as follows:	
			"The new trench of the enemy is about 3 ft deep with 1 1/2 ft of earth thrown up to the front and rear. It is 2 ft wide at the bottom and 3 ft wide at the top. It is not revetted in any way. It has no bath mats. It is not full of water, but soggy. It is of recent construction. It has been continued on to the right of the hedge and runs in rear thereof. It has no dugouts. It has no regular sentries. It is not garrisoned. It is connected with the wood behind by a shallow and narrow <del>communication</del> trench. It is sufficiently far advanced to admit of being worked on in the day time. It has no M.G. emplacement.	

*See*  
*See*  
*See*

**WAR DIARY**  
or  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**  
(Erase heading not required.)

Sheet No. 3.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>MARCH 1916 (cont).</u></p> <p>No sap-head is under construction. No gas cylinders are installed. No sandbag work was noted."</p> <p>The party returned safely at 10.55 p.m. No enemy patrols were seen.</p> <p>Up to March 25th the last day of our tour we had had only eight casualties. During that morning, however, the neighborhood of Border dugouts was heavily shelled and four dugouts were hit. Our Reserve Company "C" lost five men killed and ten wounded and a working party from "D" Company which was passing at the time had seven men wounded.</p> <p>Noon brought a lull but at 3.15 p.m. the enemy started shelling our front line trenches A.7 to A.10 with 6.9 Howitzer, 4.2 Howitzer, shrapnel and 15 pounders H.B.</p> <p>The shelling reached its maximum intensity at 3.30 p.m. and continued very heavy until 4.15 p.m. where fire began to subside and at 4.45 p.m. had quieted down.</p> <p>Our parapet was broken in nine or ten places and parapets damaged considerably throughout the trench.</p> <p>Our wire was slightly cut along our left company frontage, i.e. A.7 to A.10 with the exception of one complete gap fifteen feet wide made in front of company Headquarters in trench A.9.</p> <p>The afternoon added seven men killed and seventeen wounded to our list of casualties.</p> <p>As soon as the wounded had been got out, the work of clearing the trench was begun and pushed vigorously until about 10.30 p.m. when our relief by the R.O.R. commenced. It was completed at 12.30 a.m. and we then began a long tiresome march back to Camp P on the <u>RENNINGHELT-VLAMERTINGHE</u> Road. The last company did not arrive there until 5 a.m. and reveille next day at even so late an hour as 10.30 met little enthusiasm.</p> <p>The following officers were attached to us for duty and instruction for a period of one month from 23.3.16.-</p>	<p style="text-align: right;"><i>See</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>See</i></p>



## WAR DIARY

ORIGINAL  
CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Sheet No. 4.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>MARCH 1916 (Cont):</u>	
			Lieut. J. P. Melrose      B Company Lieut. G. R. M. McLean    C " Lieut. R. J. Selbie        D "	<i>See See See See</i>
			Captain A. Alexander was attached to the Battalion as Chaplain 29.3.16, vice Major Wood evacuated, sick.	
			Lieut. C. E. Topp arrived from Whornccliffe and was taken on strength 29.3.16, and posted to A Company.	
			An inspection of the 42nd Battalion was held on March 31st by Brigadier General F. O. W. Loomis, D.S.O., C.O.C. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.	
			<i>G. S. Keith</i> Lieut. Col. Commanding 42nd Battalion C.E.F. 5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.	

CONFIDENTIAL  
WAR DIARY  
OF

43<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Battalion      3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> April to 30<sup>th</sup> April 1916

Volume 7

WAR DIARY

42nd Cdn. Battalion 3rd Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 30th April, 1916.

Volume 7.

Diary Text

3 Pages.

## WAR DIARY

CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

ORIGINAL.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>42nd Battalion C.E.F. (8th Royal Highlanders of Canada) WAR DIARY, APRIL 1916.</u></p>	
			<p>During our stay in Camp F the usual routine was followed - squad, platoon and company drill 9 to 11.30 a.m. and company route marches 1.30 p.m. to 3.00 p.m.</p>	<u>See</u>
			<p>Grenade throwing competitions between teams of five men per platoon were held on April 1st. Men from Battalion Permanent Grenade Platoon were not eligible. The semi-finals and finals were thrown on April 3rd, No. 5 platoon winning the finals.</p>	<u>See</u>
			<p>On April 4th the Battalion, with the exception of B Company moved to BILBERKE DUGOUTS. On the march through YPRES we were subjected to some shelling and we suffered four casualties slightly wounded.</p>	<u>See</u>
			<p>We left BILBERKE DUGOUTS on night of April 5th for the front line, relieving the 5th C.E.F. B Company moving up to BILBERKE DUGOUTS from Camp F. C and D Companies went in to front line trenches GOUBROUX ROAD to APPENDIX (Map location J.19.a.3.8. to J.18.c.3.8, sheet 28) A Company in supports and B Company in reserve at BILBERKE DUGOUTS. The 49th Canadian Battalion were on our left and the 43rd Canadian Battalion on our right.</p>	<u>See</u>
			<p>A despatch from the Battalion on our left that the enemy were rushing bombing posts in the gap, received about 7 a.m. 6th April caused some little excitement, but it proved to be an isolated operation of a small raiding party.</p>	<u>See</u>
			<p>1875 Wl. W99386 1,000,000 4/15 J.B.C. &amp; A. A.D.S.S./Form C. 2118.</p>	

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY  
(Erased heading not required.)

Page 2.

Army Form C. 2118

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>APRIL 1918 (Cont).</u></p> <p>On night of April 9th we had an inter-company relief A and B Companies occupying the front line trenches, C Company in support and D Company in reserve at <u>SILLESBEEK DUGOUTS</u>.</p> <p>On night of April 12th-13th D Company moved to Belgian Chateau and on the following night the balance of the Battalion moved to the <u>BELGIAN CHATEAU</u> being relieved by the Royal Canadian Regiment. A Coy. remained at <u>SILLESBEEK DUGOUTS</u>.</p> <p>During the first two or three days of the tour, enemy's snipers were particularly aggressive, but during the remainder of the tour, there was a marked decrease in their activity. With the exception of one day, when our front line and support trenches were heavily shelled, enemy's artillery on our own area was slight.</p> <p>During the tour we had the following casualties - 4 O.R. killed, 19 O.R. wounded, one of whom died of wounds.</p> <p>Captain C. L. MacGillivray left on April 15th for England, having obtained an appointment as Musketry Instructor on the staff of the 10th Canadian Reserve Infantry Brigade.</p> <p>A draft consisting of twenty one men reported to us on 7th April.</p> <p>The eight days at the <u>BELGIAN CHATEAU</u> were most depressing. The neighborhood was shelled intermittently and the weather was continuously bad. We were called upon to furnish about three hundred men nightly for working parties which were marched long distances and worked for short periods. On the night of 21st April we were relieved by the 56th Canadian Battalion both at <u>BELGIAN CHATEAU</u> and at <u>SILLESBEEK DUGOUTS</u>, and the entire Battalion went to Camp B, about two miles S.W. of <u>POPERINGHE</u>. The night was wet and disagreeable but</p>	<p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Page 3.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>APRIL 1916. (cont).</u>	
			we had the good luck that no part of our route was shelled during the march. Our casualties during the eight days were one killed and nine wounded.	<u>Sbu</u>
			On 19th April Lieut. B. R. Pease was appointed Second in Command of D Company.	<u>Sbu</u>
			Captain H. F. Willcocks was struck off our strength on 23.4.16 on being attached to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe.	<u>Sbu</u>
			Lieuts. J.P. Melrose and C.R.H. McLean ceased to be attached to the Battalion for duty and instruction on 24.4.16 on their returning to England.	<u>Sbu</u>
			Nearly a year had elapsed since the Battalion had been inoculated just before leaving Montreal. During our stay at Camp B a beginning was made at again inoculating the Battalion against typhoid and para-typhoid.	<u>Sbu</u>
			We furnished daily working parties of 30 men. We also supplied one night party of 300 men and another night party of 150 men.	<u>Sbu</u>
			Lieut. Col. D. D. Cameron, commanding 17th Canadian Reserve Battalion, was attached to us for one month beginning 27th April 1916.	<u>Sbu</u>
			Lieut. R. J. Balbie ceased to be attached to the Battalion for instruction on 28th April on returning to England.	<u>Sbu</u>
			The Battalion was inspected by the Commander-in-Chief, Sir Douglas Haig on 28th April 1916.	<u>Sbu</u>
			<p><i>Dunthorn</i>          ..... 1916, Col.          Commanding 42nd Bn.,          Canadian Expeditionary Force.</p>	

CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY  
OF

42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> May to 31<sup>st</sup> May 1916

Volume 8

\*

WAR DIARY

42nd Cdn. Bn. 3rd Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 21st May, 1916.

Volume 8.

Diary Text

4 Pages.



## WAR DIARY

CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

ORIGINAL.

(Erase heading not required.)

Page 1.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>MAY, 1916.</u>	
			On 29th April we relieved the 5th C.M.R. in front line trenches 52 to 57 (Map location I.30.b.1.4. to I.24.a.8.9.) the 49th Battalion being on our left and a Battalion of the 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade on our right.	<u>See</u>
			On two occasions our front was shelled but few shells fell in our trenches and these caused no casualties. On the whole the tour was particularly fortunate. We "STOOD IO" on two occasions - once when the enemy attacked with gas on the British Front near KEMMEL and again when, after lively artillery fire, they attacked with a small raiding party on the two Battalion frontages to the left of us.	<u>See</u>
			After two preliminary excursions a patrol consisting of Lieut. A. Moutledge, Sergt. Price, Sergt. Jones and Ptes. Bellers, Pitt and Blough went out at 10 p.m. on the evening of May 6th-7th and returned at 1.30 a.m. after entering German advanced trench. They brought back a German sniper's plate and samples of German wire.	<u>See</u>
			During the tour our casualties were - 2 killed, 11 wounded, two of whom died later.	<u>See</u>
			The fine weather enabled us to make important progress in betterments in trenches. About 400 yards of new wire were erected, a new beehive dugout for signallers at Battalion Headquarters was completed, and substantial improvements made in front parapet, and at both ends of St. Peter Street communication trench.	<u>See</u>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

PAGE 2.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>MAY, 1916. (cont).</u>	
			On May 7th we were relieved by the R.C.R. and moved in to Brigade Reserve at Camp E on the VLAMERTINGHE-RENINGHELST ROAD.	<u>See</u>
			On May 8th we received a draft of 58 men - 8 of whom were our own men returning from hospital. The majority of the new men came from the 55th Battalion recruited in New Brunswick.	<u>See</u>
			On May 6th Brigadier General A.C. Macdonnell, C.M.G., D.S.O., assumed command of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade, having recovered from his wounds received about three months earlier.	<u>See</u>
			The amount of training at Camp E was limited by working parties and bad weather.	<u>See</u>
			On May 9th, Lieut. G. Turnbull, 73rd Canadian Battalion was attached to us for one month's training.	<u>See</u>
			The reissue of our kilts which had been stored over the winter, and a new issue of Balmorals about this time did much to improve the appearance of the Battalion.	<u>See</u>
			On 12th May, Captain E.D. Morse proceeded on duty with 177th Tunneling Company, and on the 15th May Lieut. S.M. Bosworth was attached to Headquarters 1st Canadian Infantry Brigade for training.	<u>See</u>

WAR DIARY  
OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form C. 2118

ORIGINAL.

Page 2.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>MAY, 1916. (Cont).</u></p> <p>On 15th May on our Brigade going into Corps Reserve, the 42nd Battalion moved about half a mile along the road to Camp D, exchanging places with the 58th Canadian Battalion. Here training was resumed although on two nights we were still called upon for working parties of 250 to 300 men.</p> <p>Major Walkem, Captain Gorsworthy and about fifty others (N.C.Os and men) received a four days grenade course under Captain Macdonald, Brigade Grenade Officer. A class of 20 N.C.Os and men received three days instruction in squad, <del>company</del> and arm drill under Sergeant Gibson of the 2nd Battalion, <del>Company</del> Guards and <del>sniper</del> snipers was done by snipers.</p> <p>On 22nd May we relieved the 2nd C.M.R. Battalion in HOOGE sector of front line, trenches 70/74, the 49th Battalion being on our right and a Battalion of the Oxfords - 60th British Brigade - on our left.</p> <p>We were fortunate enough to have good weather a matter of more than ordinary importance in this sector where living conditions in the front line were exceptionally poor. The left company frontage consisted of eight isolated posts, inaccessible by daylight, the intervening space being both open to view and waist deep in water and slime. The right company frontage consisted of a wet trench whose parapet had been badly knocked about in places by shell fire, with a long, dilapidated exposed communication trench leading to it; there were practically no dugouts in either area and previous heavy fighting on this site had left the ground in a very foul condition. The enemy was not specially active although we were shelled intermittently.</p>	<p>See</p> <p>See</p> <p>See</p> <p>See</p>

WAR DIARY  
OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

CONFIDENTIAL

ORIGINAL.

Army Form C. 2118

Page 4.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>MAY, 1916. (Cont).</u></p> <p>The work of L/Cpl Jupe and of Stretcher Bearers Smith and Barrett, all of A Company, in caring for wounded during one such period of shelling was very favourably reported on by their Company Commander. No. 418,034 Pte Wardm. J. of the Signal Section also did good work in keeping open telephone communication to HOOGE BELLARS. Sergeant Tank reports as follows regarding Pte. Ward:-</p> <p>"During the eight days he repeatedly left his station and repaired wires in places exposed to enemy sniping. He did this work together with his duties as an operator."</p> <p>Our snipers, under sergeant Ghim, also did well.</p> <p>The tour was devoid of special incident until 30th May when we suffered a serious loss in the death of Sergt. F. J. Price from shell fire. This M.G.O. had been in charge of his company's patrols since the Battalion Scout company disbanded and had done such good work in this and other directions that he had been recommended for a Commission.</p> <p>Total casualties for the tour were 3 O.R. killed and 26 wounded.</p> <p>On 30th May we were relieved by the Royal Canadian Regt. and went in to Brigade Support with our Headquarters, Lewis Gun section and two companies (A and C) at ZILLERBEE DUGOUTS, D Company at BELGIAN CHATEAU, 3 platoons of B Company at YPRES RAMPARTS and the remaining platoon manning defended posts I.H. and I.K.</p>	<p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p>

*W. J. ...*  
Lieut. Col.  
Commanding 42nd Batta.  
Canadian Expeditionary Force

CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY  
OF

12<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> June to 30<sup>th</sup> June 1916

Volume 9

WAR DIARY

42nd Cdn. Bn. 3rd Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 30th June, 1916.

Diary Text

1688 Volume 9.  
15 Pages.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

ORIGINAL.

CONFIDENTIAL.

Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices												
			<p align="center"><u>42ND BATTALION. ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA.</u></p> <p><u>JUNE 1918.</u> The action of 2nd June being the first of any importance in which we took part will probably justify our quoting in full Lieut. Col. Cantlie's report regarding it:-</p> <p>"On the morning of 2nd June the 42nd Canadian Battalion were acting as Brigade Support for the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade frontage comprising HOOGE and NORTH and SANCTUARY WOOD. Battalion was disposed as follows:-</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Hqs. &amp; 2 companies (AMB)</td> <td>-</td> <td>SILBERSCH DUCOURS.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 Company (2 Coy)</td> <td>-</td> <td>RELIGAN CHATEAU.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 " (3 platoons) (1 Coy)</td> <td>-</td> <td>VERES BARRACKS.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1 platoon</td> <td>-</td> <td>DETACHED POSTS I.E. &amp; I.K.</td> </tr> </table> <p>"A heavy bombardment by the enemy of SANCTUARY WOOD frontage and frontage of 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade on our right continued all day.</p> <p>"At 2 p.m. orders were received to send one company to HOOGE to reinforce the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade and company to man SILBERSCH SWITCH. Our remaining two companies were despatched about one hour later to man the line behind HOOGE and to affect a Junction with the P.P.C.B.I. who were still holding support trenches in NORTH SANCTUARY WOOD Area. In the evening our Headquarters details joined a company in SILBERSCH SWITCH.</p> <p>"During the night of 2nd June and whole of 3rd June the companies were detached and their experiences will have to be recorded separately.</p>	Hqs. & 2 companies (AMB)	-	SILBERSCH DUCOURS.	1 Company (2 Coy)	-	RELIGAN CHATEAU.	1 " (3 platoons) (1 Coy)	-	VERES BARRACKS.	1 platoon	-	DETACHED POSTS I.E. & I.K.	<p align="right"><u>See</u></p> <p align="right"><u>See</u></p> <p align="right"><u>See</u></p>
Hqs. & 2 companies (AMB)	-	SILBERSCH DUCOURS.														
1 Company (2 Coy)	-	RELIGAN CHATEAU.														
1 " (3 platoons) (1 Coy)	-	VERES BARRACKS.														
1 platoon	-	DETACHED POSTS I.E. & I.K.														

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SHEET NO. 2.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1918.</u> "A Company, on arrival at <u>MARSH COPSE</u>, reported to Colonel Baker, 5th C.M.A., who instructed them to hold the North west corner of <u>MARSH COPSE</u>. The company lined a trench at this point but shell fire forced them to draw back to <u>BILLBUSH</u> communication trench, about fifty yards distant. There they received a message from the P.F.C.I.I. saying they were cut off in <u>SANDWICH WOOD</u>. Leaving one platoon in <u>BILLBUSH</u> Trench Major H. O. Walkem, the O.C. Company moved his company up <u>BORDER LANE</u> connecting with the P.F.C.I.I. in <u>LOVERS LANE</u>, having informed Colonel Baker of his action. They held this point from about 8.30 p.m. until the following morning although subjected to very heavy shell and rifle fire. On the morning of the 3rd instant, Major Walkem took the remainder of his three platoons - reduced to about thirty - back to join his platoon in support in <u>BILLBUSH</u> communication trench.</p>	<p><i>See</i></p>
			<p>"B Company arrived in P. Line about 8.30 p.m. and June reporting to O.C. P.F.C.I.I. About two hours later D Company arrived under Lieut. Pease (Captain G.H. Blackader having been wounded by shrapnel on the way up) and strengthened up the P. Line which up to this time was very thinly held. At 10 P.M. a verbal message from Major Gray Commanding the P.F.C.I.I. was received asking for reinforcements. One Sergeant and forty men were despatched from B and D Coy's. up to <u>LOVERS LANE</u>: Heavy shelling, at times of very great intensity, continued throughout the night. The account may be continued in the words of O.C. B Company:-</p>	
			<p>"At about 2 a.m. Colonel Griesbach arrived and advised me that the 49th Battalion assisted by the 52nd and 60th Bns. would make a counter attack, but he had not yet connected with the two latter Battalions.</p>	
			<p>"At this time small groups of men were observed coming towards us across the Gap who, on arrival, turned out to be No. 2 Company P.F.C.I.I. who were evacuating trenches 65 and 66.</p>	



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SERIAL No. 3.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> (CONT). Lieut. Col. Griesbach interviewed the officer in charge and in discussing the situation with me asked me to write the Brigadier as per following letter:-</p> <p>FROM: CAPTAIN HOBSON. TO: BRIGADIER GENERAL MACDONALD.</p> <p>'I have just seen Col. Griesbach and had a conference with him and he wishes me to advise you as follows. The remnants of No. 2 Coy. P. I. C. D. I. have just come in, about sixty in all, and advise him that they had left their trench and MATHS CURSE as they were being surrounded, the Germans being on both sides. Col. Griesbach wishes you to know that the situation is different from what he believed from previous information and as the 58th Battalion have not arrived he cannot commence counter attack at the moment. The R. Line is being strongly held and he will advise you more fully himself when he finds out the situation on the right flank where we are given to understand the Germans are pushing ahead in MATHS CURSE. Apparently the front is entirely in the hands of the enemy from the CAP to trenches 54-57 which we are also advised are lost. It is possible that some of No. 1 Company P. I. C. D. I. may be holding out in trenches 52 and 53 (AOP) but it is extremely difficult.'</p> <p>'Lieut. Col. Griesbach then left to join Major Gray.</p> <p>'At about 3.30 a.m. Lieut. Col. Cascoigne arrived at head of BOND STREET and R. Line looking for Col. Griesbach. He was followed a little later by Major Weaver 49th bn. and Col. Hay, 58th bn. These officers all endeavoured to get in touch with Col. Griesbach as promptly as possible but there was some delay. Lieut. P. Hopwood also tried to locate Col. Griesbach but without success.</p> <p>'At about 6 a.m. the 60th bn. proceeded to the right, some having come up Regent street and others up Bond Street and then along the R. Line.</p> <p>'At 10 a.m. I received a message reading as follows:-</p> <p>Major Gray: The 49th bn. is now ready to make a counter</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SHEET NO. 4.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u>            (cont). attack but as I am unable to find the 52nd and 60th Bns. who were to assist, will you ask the companies of the 42nd on your left to co-operate. Sgd. Lieut. Col. Griesbach.            Capt. Nelson: "Will you co-operate in above attack?"            (sgd) Major Gray.            To this message which had no time marked on it, I replied:            Major Gray:- The 60th Bn. passed through us and is now on our right and the R. Line is blocked with men. The 52nd Bn. are also here. If you wish us to co-operate in addition, I am at your orders.            (sgd) Herbert Nelson, Capt.            "Nothing developed during the day but at 7 p.m. the 60th Bn. proceeded back through our lines in spite of my protests so that I was compelled to halt them till darkness as they were drawing heavy shelling.            "At 8 p.m. a heavy shelling took place which lasted about half an hour, and was followed by an attack which, however, was easily repulsed as in addition to the 42nd, the 60th Bn. were in the R. Line.            "Another heavy shelling took place at 11.45 a.m. with machine gun and rifle fire."            C Company, which occupied HILBERSUM SWITCH lost its Company Commander, Major G.B. Coristine on the way up. Major B. Molennan immediately went up and took charge. About 5.30 p.m. 2nd June, Captain W.D. Hensworthy brought up Hqrs. details to the SWITCH. All night and the next day were spent in improving the trench which was in very bad condition when occupied. 10,000 rounds G.A.A. and a supply of Very Lights and reserve water supply were also brought up.</p>	<p><i>See</i></p>
				<p><i>See</i></p>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SHEET NO. 5.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> (CONT).</p> <p>"I was called to 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Hqs. at 6 p.m. 3rd June and after some discussion orders were issued at 8 p.m. authorising me to relieve the P.P.C.B.I. and 49th Battalions in trenches - LOWERS BANK, GOURDIE ROAD, BARRINGTON AVE., BYDARD AVENUE and R. LINE 63 to 68, with the following troops 69th Canadian Battalion already in R. Line, two companies of 52nd Can. Battalion, one company in R. Line and one supposed to be near YVES, also some details about HILLESBEEK BUND.</p> <p>"There was considerable delay in getting in touch with the 52nd Battalion but finally got about forty men of this Bn. and their Scout officer and runners were sent to the company near YVES. These forty men were taken up to HILLESBEEK SWITZER and relieved C company of 42nd Bn. who were sent to R. Line under Captain Worsworthy.</p> <p>"I at once started for YVONNE POST accompanied by Major McLennan and a runner.</p> <p>"Upon crossing between HILLESBEEK ROAD and YVONNE POST there was a heavy enemy bombardment and we were forced to lay on the ground a considerable time.</p> <p>"As soon as possible we started again and on reaching YVONNE POST, after one o'clock, we found that Lieut. Col. Griesbach and Major Jamson had left.</p> <p>"Major McLennan had brought up orders for the 50th and 52nd Bns. with him as we felt we would get through as quickly as any runners and fully expected to find some means of communication.</p>	

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Army Form C. 2118

SECRET NO. 6.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1918.</u> (Cont).</p> <p>"Major McLenman stonoe went to the P.P.C.E.I. Hqs. and advised them it would be impossible to relieve those portions of their Regiment and the 48th Bn. in <u>LOWERS WALL, GOURDOK ROAD</u> and vicinity that night as it was then almost daylight.</p> <p>"The platoons of the P.P.C.E.I. who were in the R.Line were relieved that night, our orders were to take over R/65-68 but we garrisoned R.69 and R.70 as well, in order to keep in touch with the R.C.R. and to thin out the R.Line.</p> <p>"I advised the 52nd and 60th Bns. that balance of relief would be carried out the evening of the 4th June and also received a relief order by wire. This was carried out and completed 11.45 a.m. 5th June, Major McLenman acting as requested in this order.</p> <p>"On 5th June we received an order that we would be relieved by the 51st Canadian Battalion on that night.</p> <p>"We arranged to have guides at <u>YEMANNY POST</u> from all trenches. The relief was carried out as arranged with the exception that the company of the 51st Battalion which was to relieve on the right and had been started off first, was the last to arrive, owing to guide mistaking the most direct route. However, it was handed over to guides of the 60th Bn. and these men lost their way between <u>YEMANNY POST</u> and <u>LOWERS WALL</u>.</p>	

See

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY SECRET NO. 7.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> Major Tolman had taken two companies of the 50th over this route the previous night and when guides reported at WOODHURST POST he had personally asked them about their route and if they were confident about the return trip.</p> <p>"The last twenty-four hours of our tour in the trenches were notable for two patrols, both most creditable performance - the first carried out by Lieut. S. J. Mathewson, 1/Opl and four men who covered the ground between BOUNGON ROAD and BUCK WALK TRENCH and O.I.N. dugouts. It should be mentioned that Lieut. Mathewson who led the party had been under heavy shell fire in the trenches for 48 hours previously and had been slightly wounded. The second was an exceptionally daring daylight reconnaissance carried out by Sergt. O. H. Jones and Opl. W. M. Thompson. It is reported in Canadian Corps Intelligence Summary dated 6th June, as follows:-</p> <p>"Crawling up to the enemy's block about I.K.I.V. 812, they found it deserted but another one built beyond it toward which they worked and dug through the side of WASHINGTON AVENUE trench into an old dugout. They burrowed a hole through the back of this below the roof large enough to get head and shoulders through, thus having an observation post within a few yards of the enemy's trench. They remained there for an hour and three quarters keeping his working party under close observation. The trench enemy is digging here is at right angles to WASHINGTON AVENUE trench and they estimate that there were 250 men at work in the stretch within view. The whole trench was being dug very deep, a man's head barely showing above it. A strong point (M.O.) was being built just north.</p> <p>"It was apparent from enemy's attitude that they were not</p>	<i>See</i>



WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SERIAL NO. 2.

Army Form G. 2118

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> (Cont).</p> <p><u>V. Supplies of Ammunition, Food, Etc.</u> There was a good supply of ammunition in the line and at WOLMERRY POST. On the 4th June additional S.A.A., Bombs and very lights were sent up by Brigade and we were given all possible help in this way. On the afternoon of 4th June we sent up from SILSBURY BUMP ammunition for Lewis Guns and companies going up to the front line. That evening Brigade sent up 200,000 rounds S.A.A. to TRANSPORT PATH and 100,000 rounds to Gordon House. A carrying party for the above and some water and rations to both WOLMERRY POST and LOVING WALK were supplied by Brigade.</p> <p><u>VI. Medical Arrangements - Evacuation of wounded.</u> One realized what a serious problem the evacuation of the wounded is - the area adjoining LOVING WALK was not clear until the evening of Monday 5th June when a large party of stretcher bearers were sent up. Many of these men were there for 48 hours and some of them 72 hours. The night before, the stretcher bearers cleared WOLMERRY POST and over towards HAZE COPSE. If some places could be designated as clearing points for wounded it might be a help. The small number of men available in a unit holding front line makes it impossible to furnish carrying parties to any distant point but they might collect wounded to some known point where they could be sent for. Supply of stretchers NIL. Casualties had to be removed on bath mats which caused much suffering and necessitated double the number of men to carry, in addition to damage to trench. Shortage of blankets also rendered work of M.O. in keeping the wounded warm, difficult.</p>	<p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

 OF  
 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SHEET NO. 10.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> (CONT.)</p> <p><u>VII. Casualties:</u></p> <p>Our casualties were: Officers killed 2, Lieut. Lawrence de K. Stephens and Lieut. Paul Gus Richardson. Officers wounded and admitted to hospital 3 - Major W.B. Coristine, Captain G.H. Blackader and Lieut. F.H. McDougall.</p> <p>Officers wounded continuing at duty 3 - Captain Herbert Nelson, Lieut. G.H. Penne, Lieut. W.B. Lewis, Lieut. G.J. Mathewson and Lieut. H.C. Birke.</p> <p>Other ranks killed - 29.        " wounded - 228.        " missing - 30. We are still receiving evacuation returns which will no doubt account for many of these men.</p> <p><u>VIII. Special Mention - Officers.</u></p> <p>Major Bartlett Monahan for general efficiency and capacity to command.</p> <p>This officer exercised constant vigilance day and night over the situation in the front lines and directed the operation of the companies under his charge with outstanding ability. He also rendered valuable assistance in personally guiding in to their positions the details and companies of the units coming up to support and for relief during heavy bombardments and at times when guides were not available.</p> <p>Captain Herbert Nelson, for efficient services and capable direction of the operations in the p. line under his command. He brought his company safely through two heavy barrages of artillery fire in its position in support on the left flank and gave most valuable assistance and direction to the companies of the 52nd Bn. and 60th Bn. which came up subsequently to their positions in the R. line.</p>	<p>See</p>



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARYSHEET NO. 11

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1918.</u> <u>(Cont).</u></p> <p>Although wounded in the head by shrapnel, Captain Nelson refused to leave the line and remained with his company throughout the action.</p> <p>Lieut. Royal J. H. King who, after being wounded and having his wound dressed at the dressing station, returned to the trenches and carried on his duties in a very creditable and efficient manner. This was particularly remarked on by many of the N. C. O. and men and did much to put heart in to them.</p> <p>Lieut. B. J. Mathewson who took out a patrol on the night of 4th June, after having been almost continuously on duty for 48 hours at shell fire, and slightly wounded.</p> <p>Captain J. K. Beveridge for efficient and most valuable services rendered in maintaining a full and regular supply of rations and water for the Battalion during this action and on all occasions when it has been in the front line trenches.</p> <p><u>ix. special mention - N. C. O's and Men.</u> <u>189,018 Coy. Sgt. (Act. Sgt.) James, D. B., who conducted the particularly daring daylight reconnaissance, mentioned above.</u></p> <p><u>418,020 Coy. Sergt. Major Welferstan (deceased) for coolness during infantry rush by Germans while defending MARE COPSE area.</u></p> <p><u>418,598 sergt McIntyre, R. (Lewis Gun Section) who continued on duty after having been twice wounded and did excellent work and set a splendid example.</u></p>	
			<p>4875 W. W. 333/366 1,000,000 4/15 J. R. C. &amp; A. A. D. S. S. Form C. 2118.</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SPRINT NO. 12.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1918.</u> (CONT). 418,016 Coy. Sergt. Major J. Dawson, who set a splendid example and performed his duties in a most cheerful and courageous manner.</p> <p>50,754 Pte (A/Cpl) J. Urquhart, water corporal. He made his way up to a Company near 42nd Corps, to 42nd Corps and the mine to make arrangements for water supply and he was always ready to act as guide, taking many casualties to the dressing station at the mill under heavy shelling.</p> <p>418,010 Sergt C. Watson (Medical Sergeant) for coolness and devotion to duty in evacuating wounded.</p> <p>418,743 I/Cpl P. H. Doe and 418,924 Pte Jew, P., who accompanied Lieut. S. J. Mathewson on patrol mentioned above.</p> <p>418,779 A/Cpl Thompson, W.A. who accompanied Sergt C. E. Jones on the mentioned during daylight reconnaissance, mentioned above.</p> <p>Your guides from 42nd Battalion supplied by Brigade HQrs. to Rifle Brigade. We have not yet been able to ascertain their names.</p> <p>Stretcher bearers: 419,038 Pte Sgt. A. W. 419,007 " Glasier, C.P. 185,925 " Kay, P., for coolness and devotion to duty.</p>	
			<p>1875 Wt. W50286 1,000,000 4/15 J.B.C. &amp; A. AD.S.S./Form C. 2118.</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SERIAL NO. 10.

(Erase heading not required.)

3

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> (cont).</p> <p>"In addition I would also like to mention Major G.C. Walker, commanding a company, Captain D.G. Forworthy, Adjutant, Captain A.W. Mackay, M.C., and D.S.M. P.W. MacFarlane, who rendered valuable services in their respective capacities, also Transport Sergeant J. Hunter.</p> <p><u>X. special points.</u></p> <p><u>Ross rifles:</u> The Ross rifles jammed badly in the attack when rapid fire was ordered and many rifles were discarded. Extra rifles were borrowed from the divisional stores to replace same and our men secured Lee-Enfield rifles whenever possible.</p> <p>"This weapon is a serious danger to troops armed with it. It unquestionably jams whenever subjected to such severe tests under service conditions. The men know this better than anyone else and absolutely lack confidence in this rifle.</p> <p><u>Band Wag:</u> It was some little time before a steady supply of these could be obtained. Machinery should be arranged by which a steady supply will immediately begin going up to front line in case of shortage.</p> <p><u>Guides:</u> The importance of having guides who know the district thoroughly; also that trenches and locations in the area must have definite names - so often there seem to be alternative names.</p> <p><u>Route control:</u> The necessity of having some thoroughly posted guides to stand at junction points and control traffic passing in both directions, and be of general assistance to parties moving about the area.</p>	<p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p>

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SECRET NO. 14.

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices																								
			<p><u>JUNE 1918.</u> (CONT.)</p> <p>On June 12th we received a Draft of 100 C.R. who were distributed as follows:-</p> <table style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>A Company</td> <td>-</td> <td>31</td> <td>C Company</td> <td>-</td> <td>25.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td>-</td> <td>25</td> <td>D</td> <td>-</td> <td>25.</td> </tr> </table> <p>also Lieut. Ralph Willcock, from 71st Canadian Battalion, who was posted to B Company.</p> <p>On June 14th Lieut. A. Joly de Lotbiniere proceeded to Headquarters Canadian Corps, for special duty.</p> <p>The following N.C.O.s. were included in the King's Birthday Honours, having been awarded the Military Medal:-</p> <table style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>418,258</td> <td>Sgt Kingman, W.J.</td> <td>A Company.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>418,366</td> <td>" Moore, C.</td> <td>"</td> </tr> </table> <p>In accordance with ruling made by the French Government, all clocks were put forward one hour, at 11 p.m. 14th June.</p> <p>On 15th June the following officer reinforcement arrived:-</p> <table style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>Lieut. W. C. Milton,</td> <td>posted to A Company.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut. S. Macdonald,</td> <td>" C "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut. R. F. Todd,</td> <td>" D "</td> </tr> </table> <p>During our stay in rest billets the personnel of the signal section was brought up to a total of twenty-five, being augmented by men from the new drafts.</p> <p>On the night of 21st-22nd June the Battalion relieved the 3rd Bn. Grenadier Guards, taking over area from COURCEL ROAD to VINC STREET inclusive, the Royal Canadian Regiment being on our left and the 7th Canadian Infantry Battalion on our right.</p>	A Company	-	31	C Company	-	25.	B	-	25	D	-	25.	418,258	Sgt Kingman, W.J.	A Company.	418,366	" Moore, C.	"	Lieut. W. C. Milton,	posted to A Company.	Lieut. S. Macdonald,	" C "	Lieut. R. F. Todd,	" D "	<p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p> <p><i>See</i></p>
A Company	-	31	C Company	-	25.																							
B	-	25	D	-	25.																							
418,258	Sgt Kingman, W.J.	A Company.																										
418,366	" Moore, C.	"																										
Lieut. W. C. Milton,	posted to A Company.																											
Lieut. S. Macdonald,	" C "																											
Lieut. R. F. Todd,	" D "																											

## WAR DIARY

Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SERIAL NO. 15.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> (cont.)</p>	
			<p>This portion of the line had seen very severe fighting both on 12th June and in the successful Canadian counter attack on 13th June. The trenches were in bad shape, the burial of the dead not completed and the positions occupied by the enemy on our front not exactly known. During our five days, progress was made in all three directions and with regard to the last named, some very creditable patrolling was carried out by Lieuts. S. J. Mathewson and A. Routledge, Sergt. C. E. Jones and Corporal W. E. Thompson. As a result, the old Canadian front line which had not been held by the Battalion when we relieved, was occupied from its junction with VIGO STREET to a point forty yards North of WARRINGTON AVENUE while our Advanced post on COURAGE ROAD was pushed forward from near WARRINGTON AVENUE to a point where it overlooks CHURCH CROSS.</p>	See
			<p>The 7th Canadian Battalion was relieved during our tour by the 13th Canadian Battalion who had been an object for our emulation since we were formed and our first school masters on arriving in France. That we were holding the line side by side with them seemed to mark a new chapter in the history of the 42nd.</p>	See
			<p>Casualties for the tour - Officers wounded two - Captain G. J. Horsworthy and Lieut. W. E. Thompson. C.B. killed 8, C.B. wounded 38.</p>	See
			<p>On night of 26th-27th June the battalion was relieved by the 49th Canadian Battalion and moved in to Brigade Support, at BILLYMERE BARRACKS, where we furnished nightly working parties of from 200 to 470 men.</p>	See
			<p>We moved on night of June 30th-July 1st in to Divisional Reserve at Camp B (OTTAWA) being relieved by the 58th Canadian Battalion.</p>	See
			<p><i>Pro Hammett</i> Lieut. Col.</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

SECRET NO. 1.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices																																
			<p><u>JUNE 1916.</u> (Cont).</p> <p>On the night of June 5th the Battalion, on relief, proceeded to Camp A where we remained until the afternoon of the 7th when the Brigade moved back to rest billets near STANVOORNA. On the 8th June when at Camp A we were ordered to be ready to move up to the line to assist the 20th Division on the left of HOOGE, but the order was cancelled later the same day.</p> <p>Training at STANVOORNA was commenced on 9th June - am, squad and company drill 9 to 11.30 a.m. and route march 1.30 to 3.30 p.m.</p> <p>On June 10th drill sergeant G. Garradine of 2nd Bn. Irish Guards and Drill sergeant C. Search of 3rd Bn. Grenadier Guards were attached to the Battalion.</p> <p>On June 11th we received a draft of 195 men, who were distributed as follows:-</p> <table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>A Company</td> <td>-</td> <td>97.</td> <td>C Company</td> <td>-</td> <td>48.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B</td> <td>-</td> <td>68.</td> <td>D</td> <td>-</td> <td>87.</td> </tr> </table> <p>On June 11th the following transfers and appointments in Officers were made:-</p> <table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <tr> <td>Lieut. J. A. M. Dawson</td> <td>transferred to C company.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut. R. E. Hwings.</td> <td>" " C "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut. R. B. Binley</td> <td>" " D "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut. G. B. Wilson</td> <td>" " B "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut. G. J. de Lotbiniere</td> <td>" " D "</td> </tr> </table> <table border="0" style="margin-left: 40px; margin-top: 10px;"> <tr> <td>To be Actg. O.C. C Coy.</td> <td>Lieut. R. E. Hwings.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>O.C. D "</td> <td>Lieut. G. R. Pense.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>To be Act. and in Command B Coy.</td> <td>Lieut. G. B. Wilson.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>" " C "</td> <td>Lieut. R. V. Evans.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>" " D "</td> <td>Lieut. G. J. Mathewson.</td> </tr> </table>	A Company	-	97.	C Company	-	48.	B	-	68.	D	-	87.	Lieut. J. A. M. Dawson	transferred to C company.	Lieut. R. E. Hwings.	" " C "	Lieut. R. B. Binley	" " D "	Lieut. G. B. Wilson	" " B "	Lieut. G. J. de Lotbiniere	" " D "	To be Actg. O.C. C Coy.	Lieut. R. E. Hwings.	O.C. D "	Lieut. G. R. Pense.	To be Act. and in Command B Coy.	Lieut. G. B. Wilson.	" " C "	Lieut. R. V. Evans.	" " D "	Lieut. G. J. Mathewson.	<p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p> <p><u>See</u></p>
A Company	-	97.	C Company	-	48.																															
B	-	68.	D	-	87.																															
Lieut. J. A. M. Dawson	transferred to C company.																																			
Lieut. R. E. Hwings.	" " C "																																			
Lieut. R. B. Binley	" " D "																																			
Lieut. G. B. Wilson	" " B "																																			
Lieut. G. J. de Lotbiniere	" " D "																																			
To be Actg. O.C. C Coy.	Lieut. R. E. Hwings.																																			
O.C. D "	Lieut. G. R. Pense.																																			
To be Act. and in Command B Coy.	Lieut. G. B. Wilson.																																			
" " C "	Lieut. R. V. Evans.																																			
" " D "	Lieut. G. J. Mathewson.																																			

D 45  
Folder 1



WAR DIARY

42ND CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION, (3RD CANADIAN DIVISION)

FROM 1st JULY, 1916 TO 31st JULY, 1916

VOLUME 10



CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY

OF

*42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division*

*From 1<sup>st</sup> July to 31<sup>st</sup> July 1916*

Volume *6* 10.

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Divsn.  
from 1st to 31st July, 1916.

Diary Text

6 Pages.

Volume 10

## WAR DIARY

OR

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Leave heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

*Original**42nd Canadian Bn*

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	JULY	1ST.	<p>We moved on night June 30th/July 1st. to Divisional Reserve. Camp "D", (OTTAWA), being relieved by the 58th. Canadian Battalion. Here we remained for 11 days, during which the following Officers received courses: - <i>to be checked</i></p> <p>Lieut. Routledge - <i>scouting</i> - TENDRHEM.      Lieut. Topp - Bayonet.            Lieut. Studd - Bayonet.      Lieut. S. McDonald, (not completed owing to a sprained ankle.)</p>	
		3RD.	<p>On July 3rd. Lieut. Evans proceeded on a month's general Course at 2nd. Army Central School of instruction.</p> <p>On 2nd. July Lieut. J. O. Stewart was appointed Acting Grenade Officer and on 3rd. July Captain Grafftey, who had rejoined from Hospital the day previous, was transferred to "A" Company as 2nd. in Command.</p> <p>Capt. Horaworthy and Lieut. H. G. Birks also rejoined at Camp "D".</p> <p>Lieut. Bosworth, who had been attached on 15th. May to Headquarters, 1st. Canadian Infantry Bde. for instruction was confirmed in his appointment as Orderly Officer on that staff on June 30th.</p> <p>The following new Officers arrived from SHOROLIFFs: - They were posted to Companies set opposite to their names: -</p> <p>Lieut. A. J. Perks (64th. Bn.) &amp; Lieut. J. K. Mathewson - "C" Company.            Lieut. C. S. Keilly (82nd. Bn.) - "B" Company.      Lieut. C. B. Martin ( ) - "D" Company.            Lieut. J. W. McLeod (82nd. Bn.) - "A" Company.</p> <p>The Anglo-French offensive on the SOMME which began about this time was followed on all fronts with the keenest interest.</p>	<i>See</i> <i>See</i> <i>See</i> <i>See</i> <i>See</i>
		6TH.	<p>On July 6th. the Battalion suffered its most serious loss since coming to France, Maj. McLennan being seriously injured by having his horse fall with him while taking part in the 7th. Brigade Sports.</p>	<i>See</i>
		10TH.	<p>On 10th. July the Battalion, with the exception of "D" Coy., moved to YPERE where we were quartered in the CAVALRY BARACKS.</p>	<i>See</i>
		11TH.	<p>On the night of the 11th. we relieved the 43rd. Bn. and also the two left Coys. of the 1st. Can. Bn. taking over front line trenches 56 to 60 inclusive (Map Location I.24.d.6.1. to J.19.a.1.3. - HILBEKs). The R.C.M. were on our left and the 49th. Battalion on our right for the first four days, after which the latter were replaced by the P.P.C.L.I.</p> <p>Our 8 days tour is chiefly notable for the splendid patrol and other work done by Sergeant O. B. Jones, H.C.O.1/c. Scouts, and the valuable observation reports of Pte. B. S. Jackson. Their work culminated in a slight demonstration on the night of July 17th/18th. consisting of the building of a barricade and the removal of a strip of enemy's wire entanglements. The following is a</p>	<i>See</i> <i>See</i> <i>See</i>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	JULY 12TH.		<p>report made by Sgt. O. B. Jones:— I have the honor to report that I conducted a patrol of four men from the Head of ST. PETERS STREET at Trench 56 into No Man's Land at 11.40 p.m. The patrol proceeded through our wire about 20 yards from trench (56) and moved along the frontage of trench (56) about 30 yds. until encountered enemy sap, leading from I.24.d.6<math>\frac{1}{2}</math>.l<math>\frac{1}{2}</math>. Approximate, to I.24.d.8<math>\frac{1}{2}</math>.g., approximate. This trench was entered and found to be very badly damaged by artillery fire, being almost obliterated for about 30 yards. The patrol moved slowly in single file up this sap and found it to be in fairly good shape, only occasional shell-holes breaking it here and there. The trench was dry and bore marks of recent shovelling. (This began about 45 or 50 yards from trench 60). It is narrow and varies from 4<math>\frac{1}{2}</math> to 5<math>\frac{1}{2}</math> feet in depth. Condition of Sap:— Hostile parties could quite easily come up it unobserved by day. Progress was of course slow, as it was thought that enemy listening posts would be encountered, so that extreme caution had to be taken. No such obstacle was encountered however, and one of the patrol succeeded in getting up to and through the enemy's wire until the enemy's flare-light flares, 2 in number, were uncomfortably close. Work on Sap.— It has been stated that the good part of the trench bore signs of having been recently shovelled and, while this is supported by the fact that picks and shovels had been seen in the trench, it should be noted that no attempt has been made to clear those few parts of it that have been blown in. Furthermore, although it would be almost impossible to see footprints in the darkness, yet I felt my way along very carefully and could feel no marks of that nature. It should be added however, that the sifting of dirt from the sides of the trench was noticed, and this would conceal footprints. It must remain problematical however therefore, as to whether the enemy sends patrols out beyond his wire. (My own opinion is that he does not. Enemy Occupation. Judging from the map it would seem that the enemy sentries (firing flares) were in their forward line. I cannot state this definitely. After passing through his wire I poked my head around a corner and, seeing a sentry some 2 or 3 yards away, decided that the information gained had better not be risked by a bout with him. Enemy Sentries. On my left was another sentry about 20 yards away. At this time the night was cloudy and a faint drizzle of rain falling, so that surface marks could not be plainly distinguished. Wire.— The enemy's wire is of the familiar concertina barbed type. Two lines have been put out touching one another. At the point where it crosses the sap it can be passed without much difficulty. Hostile Patrols. No hostile patrols were encountered. Work.— No enemy parties were seen outside his trench working. Work was, however, heard to some extent in his front line, while considerable hammering and some sawing of wood was heard to be taking place in his support line well back. Flares. He was active with his flares; five of these "failed". This, in my experience, is unusual. Machine Guns.— Machine Guns disconcertingly active. No definite locations can be reported. Flanks.— The patrols kept a sharp watch on the flanks, more particularly the left flank, which was hurriedly scouted for some 80 yards. Nothing to report thereon save some "nervous" bombing opposite trench 60. Wiring.— Excellent opportunities offer for concealed</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	JULY 12TH.		<p><u>Wiring.</u> (cont'd). - wiring in the shell holes immediately in front of our line. The <del>value</del> of such wiring would be to bunch the enemy in an attack, thereby creating favorable M.G. targets. I was impressed with the fact that the enemy was strengthening his present line at top speed and in depth and wiring himself in; thereby anticipating danger of contemplated attack. Patrol returned at 2.35 a.m. (Sgt. O.S. Jones. Ref:- Map Y.G.16-5 (No Man's Land) R.F.1/8000.</p> <p>Another patrol under Sgt. Jones Observations by Sgt. Jones were as follows: / O.P.'s established at the following points:- SACKVILLE ST - 1.24.d.8.8.-Approx. PINCHER ST. - 1.24.d.8.7.7. approx., and CRAB CRAWL - 1.24.d.8.4. approx. A German Officer with a private was observed at about 3 pm at J.19.a.5.2.(approx.) Dress:- Officer - Light blue tunic with black braid on seams at back-trousers blue - cap peaked, predominant colour black. Private's dress unobserved. At J.19.a.4.5. at 3.30 a.m. 5 Germans observed following a footpath, and not using the trench at this point. Pte. Jackes killed one of them. Dress:- Blue uniforms - blue caps (no red band noticed.) Shovelling noticed during the day at J.19.a.4.2. and J.19.a.5.2. approx. It is thought that a Headquarters might be situated here. Following uniforms observed from time to time :- (1) very light blue- (2) field grey caps.- (3) plain field grey.- (4) same with red band.) Pte. Daniels at 2 p.m. wounded a German at J.19.a.4.2. wounded man wearing an all RED cap. Man also observed wearing red cap and blue uniform, also blue caps with white bands round them. At 12.30 p.m. working party observed at J.19.c.3.1. approx. General attitude of enemy very bold, moving about with considerable nonchalance. Our snipers succeeded in making this practice unhealthy. Enemy machine guns were active by snipers inactive. 3 German Planes went over our front line during the day. Enemy artillery was inactive.</p>	
	14TH.		<p>Patrol conducted by Sgt. Jones failed in its objective which was to capture a prisoner. The failure was not through lack of efforts. The patrol went out from Trench 56 to the left of St. PETERS ST., and followed down the enemy sap. The patrol continued through two lines of barbed concertina wire up the sap for about 35 yards until a barbed wire block was encountered in the sap. It was then about 2.30 a.m., and patrol had not the time to cut through this block. Beyond this block a large shell-hole about 20' in diameter was observed; beyond this hole was further wire entanglements extending to right and left along the front of enemy trench and about 3 yards from parapet. This wire seemed continuous, and is very intricate, though not more than 3' in depth: barbed concertina wire and straight Barbed wire "aproned" to iron standards was used. The wire appeared very hard to penetrate. The enemy has also two thicknesses of barbed concertina wire about 50 yards from his trench, making 2 separate lines in all. The enemy were heard sawing hammering and patting sandbags all night, and was very industrious. No enemy patrols were encountered or seen. Enemy machine guns were less active than the previous night.</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	July 16th.		<p>A patrol under Sergeant O.B. Jones and consisting of Ptes. Bellers, Jackes and Marquard went out from Trench 56 at 2.30 am. on the 16th. They went down enemy sap at this point, remaining out for 20 hours, returning at 10.40 pm. Pte. Marquard, who speaks German fluently, was posted under enemy's wire about 20 yards from his trench. He listened to conversations taking place in enemy's lines throughout the day, but heard nothing of military importance. Enemy were noticed to cease work at 3.30 am, when they indulged in recreation and slept until 10 am. Enemy work parties were noticed between 3.30 am. and 6 am. going southward, returning between 6 pm. and 10.30 pm. Observation was rendered practically impossible by the tall grass, which waved back and forth in the wind, thereby blurring the vision. Pte. Jackes, however, who was appointed observer, managed to obtain some observations to the right of the position occupied by the patrol. Behind SHREWSBURY FOREST between points J.31-a.7.4. and J.31-b.1.1. (approx.) high grass-grown mounds, about 5 in all, possibly gun emplacements, were sighted. It was the opinion of the members of the patrol that our artillery, both light and heavy, was very effective. Before withdrawing from the sap the patrol collected 17 German cylindrical bombs and 10 Mills hand grenades. At 10.20 pm., judging congestion to have taken place in the enemy's trench, these bombs were thrown, and it is thought considerable losses were sustained by the enemy. A machine gun which had been noticed firing about 30 yards right of where sap enters enemy's lines was also bombed, and it is thought that this gun was put out of action. The patrol returned in safety, encountering practically no retaliation for the bombs thrown. At 1.30 a.m. (approx) an M.C.O. apparently directing a working party, was observed. Dress - light blue black peaked cap with red band - uniform light blue - belt and bayonet scabbard black leather. <i>See</i></p>	
	July 17th.	Between 1 am. and 3 am.	<p>a patrol under Lieut. Routledge, consisting of Sgt. O.B. Jones, Sgt. Wright and Pte. Bellers examined the sap leading out from Trench 56. This sap is about 5 feet deep, and is muddy. Earth is thrown up on each side to afford cover to a man standing in the sap. It was the intention to garrison this sap the same morning. The patrol advanced along to the enemy's wire, which was examined with a view to cutting out operations, and a sample obtained. The wire is thick and strong and would form a formidable obstacle to advancing infantry. Patrol reported enemy's machine gun fire extremely limited. <i>See</i></p> <p>At about 11 pm. Captain Grafftey proceeded out over parapet at head of CRAB CHAWL for a distance of about 30 yards. He carefully taped out a barricade about 30 yards wide, and then called out</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

 OF  
 INTELLIGENCE-SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	July 17th- 18th		<p>a party of 35 men. 5 of these were detailed to fill sandbags, the remainder being employed to pass forward sandbags. A barricade 30 yards long, 2 feet 6 inches thick and 2 feet high was erected, and behind this a trench 1 foot 6 inches deep and 2 feet wide was dug. The party was not discovered by the enemy, and returned about 1.15 am. without casualties. It was planned that on the return of the working party a wiring party, with concertina frames, should go out and wire in front of the barricade. Owing to activity with bombs and machine guns on the part of the enemy this project had to be abandoned, and instead the wiring party wired a gap in our own wire. This wiring party also returned without casualties. A party under Mr. Birks worked on three saps, cleaning them out and deepening them, until 1 am. when they were recalled by the Engineer in charge.</p> <p>A stretcher system had been organized with considerable detail for the working parties. 12 men were detailed from the Support Company to act as Stretcher Carriers and were held in readiness in WINNIPIC STREET. 4 guides were also present, the whole being under a competent H.C.O. The duty of these guides was to lead Stretcher Carriers by the most direct route to the head of the Trench Tramway, where empty trucks were in waiting. Two Stretcher Bearers had been told off to barricade party, two to the working party under Mr. Birks, and three others were available, being stationed in the Front Line close to GRAB CHAUL.</p> <p>While the barricade was in process of erection Lieut. Routledge and Sgt. O.B. Jones left Trench 56 at 12.05 am. and proceeded up Sap at this point. They thoroughly examined enemy's wire and cut same at weak and tactically important points, and dislodged iron standards anchoring this wire. A rope was passed out from our trenches and fastened around this wire. When the barricade was completed a party of men in our own trench pulled this section of wire over to our own wire, much to the disquietude of the enemy, who used a considerable number of rifle grenades bombs and Very lights ineffectively.</p> <p>It was intended to duplicate this scheme on the left flank of the enemy's first line wire opposite Trench 56, but investigations proved that enemy had been warned by previous operations on this Sector and had garrisoned. The only alternative was to attack this garrison, and this was carried out by our Bombers.</p> <p>During the work of building this barricade and cutting the wire the enemy was very quiet. Bright moonlight, however, made the work extremely difficult, and extreme caution was necessary.</p>	<p>See See</p> <p>See See</p> <p>See See</p>

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	July	17th.	Enemy working party was heard opposite barricade. Enemy Transport was heard at approximately J.19.b.2.B. at 12.30 am.	
	July	19th.	The Divisional Commander made an inspection of our area and we learned through our Brigadier that evening that he had expressed high appreciation of the progress made in improving the trenches. The close of this very successful tour was marred by the wounding of Sgt. Hunter and Pte. B.S. Jackes, both most competent men in their respective positions of Transport Sergeant and Chief Battalion Observer and Sniper. Total Casualties for the Tour were only . This included a very slight wound of Lt. Topp. On the night of July 19th/20th the Battalion moved down to Divisional Reserve at "B" Camp, where they remained until July 23rd.	Very Very Very Very Very
	July	23rd.	The Battalion moved down to rest billets in STERNVOORDES. Consistent work was done at our training, which, however, had no particularly outstanding feature. Lieut. Topp rejoined us at Camp "B".	Very
	July	31st.	The Battalion moved to "A" Camp. The weather had turned oppressively hot and the long march in heavy marching order about midday caused many prostrations.	Very
				<p><i>Pro. S. Cantile</i>  <small>1917</small>            Commanding Officer            Canadian Expeditionary Force.</p>



CONFIDENTIAL.

# WAR DIARY

OF

*42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division*

*From 1<sup>st</sup> August to 30<sup>th</sup> August 1916*

*224*

*224*

Volume *11*

*3*

WAR DIARY

42nd Cdn. Battalion 2nd Cdn. Division,  
from 2nd to 22nd August, 1916.

Volume 11.

Diary Text

3 Pages.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Error heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	1916	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	AUGUST 2ND.			The Battalion moved up from A Camp to Ypres, Headquarters at Remparts, three companies occupied the cavalry Barracks, remainder of the Battalion were in the Messastery and A.B.C. billets.	
	AUGUST 3RD.			At 9 pm. just previous to working parties falling in, a direct hit was made by a H.E. shell of heavy calibre which struck the quarters occupied by C Company with most unfortunate results, causing extraordinary heavy casualties - 59 men of whom ten were killed outright and six subsequently died of wounds, the list included eight lance-corporals.	
	AUGUST 4TH.			The Battalion moved into line and relieved 43rd. Canadian Battalion, taking over front line trenches 56 to 60 inclusive and Warrington Ave to Coureack Road. (Map location I.24.d.6.1. to J.19.a.1.3. Lilleboke) The R.C.R. Battalion on our left and the 49th on our right who were relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. for the last four days of this tour. The first half of the eight day tour was comparatively uneventful except for daring patrols including a daylight reconnaissance by Lt. Routledge and Sergt. Jones, also some minor bombing operations. The later half of our tour was marked by increased activity in the enemy's artillery and trench mortars. On the morning of the 12th August a very heavy bombardment affecting our right company and along observatory Ridge, opposite Hill 60 - which resulted in cutting all our communications, fortunately very few casualties were suffered, largely due to the work that had been done strengthening the trenches.	
	AUGUST 5TH.			Following Officer reinforcements were received: Supernumerary--Major McArthur, A. (64th Can. Bn. ) posted to C Company " " McClellan, C.C. (65th " " ) " B " " " McConnell, C.A. (65th " " ) " D " " Capt. Lucas, A. (66th " " ) " A " Lieut. Savage, G.H. (5th C.M.R. ) " D " " McFaggart J.A. (Port Garry Horse) " B "	
				During this tour two of the new officers were wounded. Lieut. G.H. Savage on the 9th inst., and Lieut. McFaggart, J.A. on the 12th inst., and I/Cpl. Bellers a valued N.C.O., who had done special patrol work and was of great service to the Battalion was killed.	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
		1916		
			The following are reports of some of the Patrols carried out:	
AUGUST 7TH.			Aug. 7th. Lieut. Routledge, Sergt. Jones and pte. Brown left Torrep at 4.45 pm. entering enemy's sap, reached point in sap about 25 yards from enemy's front trench. Sergt. Jones crawled forward under enemy's wire to within 20 yards of bombing post. This post is in a bend in the trench and has a steel sniper's plate set in it, seeing no signs of the enemy Sergt. Jones proceeded to the right for the purpose of examining the wire. With the exception of a small dip where the wire has been damaged by enemy bombing, it is very formidable - barbed concertina type from 20 - 30 ft. thick. Enemy then observed Sergt. Jones and fired upon him twice through a loophole at a range of 12 yards - one bullet passing through his hair, he dropped and scrambled back to the sap.	lll
AUGUST 9TH.			Aug. 9th. patrol under Sergt. Jones went out from our bombing post in Trench 60 to investigate enemy activity in front of Loop, they found themselves almost enveloped in a screen of enemy scouts of whom they counted eleven in different places and more were heard in the neighbourhood. Thinking the enemy might be raiding they sent back word warning the post, possibly the enemy were trying to catch patrol as it followed the same route as the previous night. The patrol returned safely but were unable to get the desired information.	lll
AUGUST 10TH.			We received reinforcements of 40 men, made up of 14 from 17th Bn. 23 from 92nd. Bn. and 3 from 79th Bn. Canadians. All of which were posted to C Company. following were total casualties during this tour; 23 in all; OFFICERS WOUNDED: 2 O.R. WOUNDED 19 O.R. KILLED: 2	lll
AUGUST 12TH.			Battalion was relieved by R.C.R. on the night of the 12th/13th, and moved down, two companies to Lillebeks Bumd, two companies to Infantry Barracks Ypres; and Headquarters to the Ramparts, Ypres. Here we spent six days furnishing working parties nightly. This was without special incident.	lll
AUGUST 16TH.			Advice of the award of the Military Medal to the following for special services they had performed on June 24th. was received, 419043 Lancecorporal Bellers, J.V.H. (killed during previous tour) 427024 private Maquard, A. 418892 " J.B.C. & A. A.D.S. Jackson, B.S.	lll



CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY  
OF

*42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division*

*From 1<sup>st</sup> September to 30<sup>th</sup> September 1916*

Volume 12

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

2

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><i>Original</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <u>WAR</u>    <u>DIARY</u>            for the    month of  <u>SEPTEMBER</u>  <u>1916</u>  <i>21<sup>st</sup> Aug - 29<sup>th</sup> Sept</i>  <u>4<sup>TH</sup> BATTALION, C. E. F.</u>  <u>5<sup>TH</sup> ROYAL HIGHLANDERS.</u>            of  <u>CANADA.</u> </p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regt., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

September 30, 1916

(Erase heading not required.)

~~4th Canadian Battalion~~

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p>Period from August 21st, to Sept. 7th. Battn. moved down via Busseboom and Poperinge to billets north west of Steenvoerde, where we remained until September 7th, spent in hard training, which included company and battalion in Attack, Night Operations, Brigade Route Marches, and Lectures to the Officers in preparation for the work to be undertaken in the SOMME. During our stay:</p> <p>Captain A. Graffey was appointed Actg. O.C. "A" company            Lieut. J.S. Mathewson " " Actg. O.C. "C" "            " A.J. Parks " " M.G. Officer.</p> <p>28th Aug. Thirty two O.R. reinforcements were received. Same date following officers were promoted temporary Captains: Lieuts. E. R. Pease, and R. L. H. Ewing, dated 2nd. July. Lieut. C. Blair Wilson dated 12th July.</p> <p>Lieut. J. Stewart proceeded to England as Bombing Instructor</p> <p>31st. Aug. Major Walker proceeded to the Base for two months, to be attached to O.C. Reinforcements.</p> <p>3rd. Sept. Thirty-six O.R. reinforcements were received            Captain S. C. Hensworthy appointed 2nd. in Command, Capt. R.L.H. Ewing, appointed Actg. Adjutant.</p> <p>7th Sept. 7th C.I.B. made its first step for the SOMME. Battn. proceeded to ESQUELERS where they entrained, spent the night on the journey, detraining at CONTREVILLE the following morning, and marched to DOMLEGER where they were billeted for three days.</p> <p>10th. Sept. Battalion left Domleger at 9 am. and marched via MASHIL-FRANSU-FRANQUEVILLE-DOMART-ST LEGER-BERTHAUCOURT to HALLOY-LES-PERNOIS, and went into billets for the night.</p> <p>11th. Sept. Battalion left HALLOY at 6.30 am. and marched via HAVERNAS-MAUGERS-TALMAS-REBEMPRE to HERRISSART. spent the night in billets.</p> <p>12th. Sept. Battalion left HERRISSART 8.30 am., and marched via CONTAY-VADENCOURT to the VALENCOURT WOOD AREA. Here they bivouaced on the side of a Mill over night.</p>	<p>llh</p> <p>llh</p> <p>llh</p> <p>llh</p> <p>llh</p> <p>llh</p>



## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118

September 30, 16

42nd. Canadian Battalion,

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

 Remarks and  
 references to  
 Appendices

Place Date Hour

Summary of Events and Information

Sept. 13th. <sup>sheet 2</sup> Batta. left VALENCOURT 6.45 am., marched via WARLOY and track 8 of SENLIS to the BRICKFIELDS where they were in Corps Reserve.

Sept. 14th. Lieut. R. R. MORRIS taken on strength, and seconded for duty with 7th C.I.B. M.G. Company

Sept. 15/17th. Here follows report of C.O. on Operations near COURCELETTE:

On the morning of the 15th Sept. the Battalion was in bivouac at the BRICKFIELDS - ALBERT.

9.00am. Orders received to prepare to move at once - taking ammunition and water wagons, and to assemble at BRIGADE at USNA HILL.

9.45am. Battalion marched out, arriving at USNA HILL about one hour later.

1.30pm. Orders were received to move forward at once and assemble in the low ground under cover north of the POZIERES ROAD.

3.00pm. Operations were received for the attack at Zero Hour 6 pm. These were read over to Company Officers and carefully explained.

4.30pm. The Battalion moved off to take up position of assembly in and behind SUGAR TRENCH, the jumping off point.

DISTRIBUTION Attacking Companies.

A	Company	Captain	Graffey,	on	Right
B	"	Lieut. S.J.	Mathewson,	on	Left.
B	"	Captain C. Blair	Wilson,	in	Support
B	"	Lieut. J.A.	Mathewson,	in	Reserve

ATTACK

The position of assembly was reached and all in readiness for the attack at 5.50 pm.

The attacking companies went over the parapet exactly at Zero Hour.

OBJECTIVES

The first objective SUNKEN ROAD was reached - also the 2nd. i.e., FARBCK GRABEN TRENCH without heavy casualties, and immediately steps were taken to clear the trench, reverse the parapet and consolidate. 2 Trench mortars and a quantity of "gun jar" ammunition were found in FARBCK GRABEN.

## WAR DIARY

30th September/16 Army Form C. 2118

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

42nd. Canadian Battalion

5

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p style="text-align: center;"><u>Sheet 3</u></p> <p>Report to that effect received from the front lines dated 6.10 O'clock and communicated to Brigade Headquarters.</p> <p><u>ARTILLERY</u> The Artillery barrage in the second objective was splendid the enemy could be seen leaving his trenches hastily as the assaulting waves approached.</p> <p><u>DISPOSITION</u> The disposition over-night of 15th/16th and on the 16th was as follows: A Company ( Capt. S. J. Mathewson, C " ( in FABECK GRABEN R. 29. a. 3. f. to R. 26. d. 4. 7. B Company ( Lieut. Toop. ) D " ( " J. A. Mathewson. ) in SUNKEN ROAD.</p> <p><u>PATROLS</u> On the night of 15th/16th a patrol under Lieut. S. J. Mathewson, L/Cpl. Field and ten men, went out and reconnoitred the ground between FABECK GRABEN and ZOLLERN GRABEN (the next objective) they covered a distance of 400 yards - no intermediate trench was found, and the line occupied by the enemy was seen not to be protected by wire.</p> <p><u>ENEMY PATROL</u> An enemy patrol of 1 N.C.O. and 4 men came to within 100 yds. of our trench - a Lewis gun was turned on them, 1 N.C.O. and two men surrendered, the others ran and were probably killed. The prisoners were about 20 years old and had recently come from ST. Elci</p> <p>The night of the 15th/16th passed without special incident apart from continued heavy shelling which caused considerable casualties. A ration party guided by Captains, Horsworthy and Ewing got through to FABECK GRABEN bringing in rations on stretchers and carried out a number of our wounded.</p> <p><u>OPERATION 16TH</u> The morning of the 16th passed without incident except for the continued heavy shelling on FABECK GRABEN and SUNKEN ROAD and area in rear.</p>	<p style="text-align: right;"><i>[Handwritten initials]</i></p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>[Handwritten initials]</i></p>

## WAR DIARY

Sept. 30, 1916

Army Form C. 2118


Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd Canadian Batta.

(Erase heading not required.)

6

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			sheet 4	
			<p>About 4 pm. the enemy developed active machine gun and rifle fire.</p>	
			<p>At this time orders were received respecting the attack on ZOLLERN GRABEN at Zero Hour 5 pm.</p>	
			<u>DISPOSITION</u>	
			<p>The disposition of our companies was then as follows:</p>	
			<p>A Company ) Lieut. S. J. Mathewson,            G " ) in FARBCK GRABEN R.29.n.3.2 to R.29.d.4.7.            B Company ) Lieut. Topp )            D " ) " J.A. Mathewson ) in SUNKEN ROAD</p>	
			<p>Bearing orders, Capt. Norwerthy went forward to explain them to Company officers, so that there would be no misunderstanding. On reaching FARBCK GRABEN he delivered instructions to O.C. companies and made everything clear for coming attack.</p>	
			<u>ATTACK</u>	
			<p>The first wave went over the parapet at 4.55 pm., the hour designated to start. The instructions were to go as far as possible before the barrage lifted, the distance to be covered being about 450 yards distance.</p>	
			<p>Lieut. Macdonald and Lieut. J. K. Mathewson went over with the first wave on the flanks, and Lieut. S. J. Mathewson with the second wave in the centre.</p>	
			<p>The Aillery Barrage on the ZOLLERN GRABEN to be attacked utterly failed. The trench farther to the right and the enemy's support trench was more heavily shelled.</p>	
			<p>When the second wave left our parapet (about 4.56 pm.) the enemy was plainly seen standing almost shoulder to shoulder in his trench. There was no artillery or M.G. fire from the flank to keep him down and the unit attacking on our Right was not then in sight.</p>	
			<p>The men realized the position as quickly as the officers and N.C.Os., but in view of the coming attack at 6.30 pm. on our Left by the 9th Brigade, and definite orders to secure ZOLLERN GRABEN before dawn; there was no alternative - Before the first</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

September 30, 1918

42nd. Canadian Batta.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p style="text-align: center;">sheet 5</p> <p>wave had gone 100 yards half the effectives were lost and the Cnd. wave was brought up to help to carry them through.</p> <p>Lieuts. J. K. Matheson on the left, and S.J. Mathewson on the right managed to get within 100 yards of the enemy trench when they were the only two left, the nearest to them were dead and wounded about twenty-five yards in their rear.</p> <p>An hour later about 25% of the attacking force returned to FABROK GRABEN to which p Coy. under Major McConnell had come up.</p> <p>When the attacking companies left FABROK GRABEN the Supporting companies moved up from SUNKEN ROAD "B" Coy. on the right and "D" Coy. on the left - two platoons of "B" Coy. were subsequently withdrawn in order to thin out the trench.</p> <p><u>ARTILLERY</u> The Artillery barrage in preparation for this attack was faulty and meagre - it held for a few minutes only and was directed behind KOLLERN GRABEN trench and on Support trenches in rear which seemed to be heavily shelled.</p> <p><u>LEWIS GUNS</u> Lewis Guns were distributed - 6 to the Attacking companies (front line) and three to the Support companies. They did some good execution early in the attack of the 16th, but the crews were soon put out by shell fire.</p> <p>2 Lewis Guns were destroyed by enemy's artillery 6 were brought back, 3 of which were damaged and have been turned into Ordnance. 1 was loaned to the 60th Bn. together with prisms.</p> <p><u>COLT GUNS</u> 4 Colt Guns advanced in rear of D Company in reserve and were set up on the parapet of SUGAR TRENCH from which positions they opened overhead fire on KOLLERN TRENCH about 6 pm. on 15th inst. In this position 1 gun was put out of action and subsequently repaired - At 7 pm. 15th inst. two guns were advanced to a position on our left flank in SUNKEN ROAD from which they carried on indirect fire. On the 16th the other two guns were advanced to a position on the Right Flank about half way between SUNKEN ROAD and KOLLERN GRABEN.</p>	

## WAR DIARY

OR

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY


(Evate heading not required.)

September 30, 1916.

Army Form C. 2118

42nd. Canadian Battalion.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>sheet - 6</u>	
			<p>All guns were in good position to withstand counter-attacks</p> <p><u>RELIEF.</u> About 12.30 pm. 17th Spt. orders were received that the 7th Brigade would be relieved that night - the relief to be effected before daylight. The last of our platoons left the lines about 4.30 am.</p> <p><u>WOUNDED</u> As far as can be ascertained, all of the wounded in the action of the 15th were removed without undue delay. Also most of the wounded in the action of the 16th.</p> <p>Our M.O. Sergt. remained behind to assist in the evacuation of any of our men who might not be located during the relief - To the best of his knowledge they were all taken out that night - Three parties were engaged in this work - i.e., from pioneer, 43rd. Bns. and Field Ambulance.</p> <p><u>ROLL CALL</u> The Roll Call on TARA HILL on the morning of the 17th sept. was 266 all ranks.</p> <p><u>PRISONERS</u> I held receipts for 1 officer, 31 O.R. in addition to which a party of 20 men were handed over to C.M.R. and a number of wounded sent out, and others who had to be left behind.</p> <p><u>CASUALTIES</u> The following are the total casualties during these Operations:</p> <p>OFFICER CASUALTIES:    Capt. C. Blair Wilson,    KILLED                                  Capt. A.A. Grafftey,        WOUNDED                                  Lieut. Allan Routledge    "                                  " J.A. Mathewson,        "                                  " J.T.L. Ghum,            "                                  " C.B. Reilly,            "                                  Capt. A. Lucas,            "                                  Lieut. C.B. Martin        "                                  Capt. S. C. Hensworthy,    "</p>	
				

## WAR DIARY

September 30, 1916 Army Form G. 2118




Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion

(Erase heading not required.)

9

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<b>sheet 7</b>	
			<p><b>CASUALTIES Cont.</b> Total casualties OTHER RANKS "KNOWN KILLED" 73  " " " " "FOUNDED" 290  " " " " "MISSING" 66 (either killed or not reported yet.)</p> <p>Total Casualties All Ranks - 437.</p>	
			<p><b>AWARDS</b></p> <p>I have submitted, under separate cover, recommendations for immediate award, in connection with these Operations.</p> <p>Captain Stanley C. Gorseworthy  " Royal L.H. King,  Lieut. S. J. Mathewson,  " Allen Routledge,  " R. Willcock,  " J. K. Matheson,  " S. Macdonald,</p> <p>and a number of N.C.Gs. and O.R.</p>	
			<p>In addition I have reported the distinguished services rendered to my Battalion throughout our whole time in France by Captain G. Blair Wilson, killed in Action, while gallantly leading his company on September 15th.</p>	
	Sept. 17th/18th.		Battalion bivouaced on TARA HILL.	
	Sept. 18th.		Moved into billets in ALBERT. The men having been exposed for thirty-six hours in pouring rain. From here we furnished working Parties.	
	Sept. 21st.		Following appointments were made:	
			Lieut. E. C. Evans. Actg.-O.C. "A" Company	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

# WAR DIARY

## OF INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

September 30, 1916

Army Form G. 2118

10

~~42nd Canadian Battalion.~~

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			Sheet 8	
	SEPT. 21st.		<u>APPOINTMENTS Cont.</u>  Lieut. C. B. TOFF Actg. O.C. "B" Company " S. Macdonald, Bombing Officer	
	SEPT. 22nd.		Thirty-four O.R. reinforcements, were received.	
	SEPT. 23rd.		Battalion marched via BOUEINCOURT-BEHLIS-to WARLOY, spent the night in billets.	
	SEPT. 24th		Battalion marched via VADENCOURT-TO UTENCOURT-PUCHEVILLERS-VAL-DE-MAISON- and went under canvas. Here we received following officer reinforcements:  Lieut. Robinson, E.A. " Montgomery, L.C. " Gifford, C.F. " Watten, R.J. " A'ronnd, L. " Waller, J.L. " Benwell, E. " Small, D.F. " Grenier, B. " Taylor, L. " Simling, C.B. " Cole, J.E. " Campbell, G. " Fontenoux, S.A. " Cohen, M.T. " Campbell, K.A. " Lyon, R.E.	
	SEPT. 26th.		Marched via VERT-GALLAND FRAM- BALNEUREUX-DONNEVILLE-to <del>PERFFRAN</del> and went into billets.	

*lll*

*lll*

## WAR DIARY

September 30, 1916

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion.

11

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information Sheet 9	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><b>SEPT. 27th.</b> Marched via BONEVILLE-FERME-DE-BOREL-VAL-DE-MAISON-HEIKESART to CONTAY, and went into billets. Here word was received of the death of our Bombing Officer, - Lieut. Allan Routledge, in hospital, on the 23rd., as a result of wounds received on the 15th in operation near COURCELLETTE. This Officer gave repeated evidence of great gallantry, both in the Ypres Salient, and in the action in which he was wounded. He had been recommended for a Military Cross before word of his death was received.</p>	<p><i>LLC</i> <i>LLC</i> <i>LLC</i></p>
		<p><b>SEPT. 28th.</b> Marched via BELLIS- to BRICKFIELDS, thence to billets in ALBERT</p>		
		<p><b>SEPT. 28th/30th.</b> Furnished working parties. Casualties on the 29th 1 O.R. killed 2 O.R. wounded.</p>		
			<p><b>SEPT. 29th.</b> Lieut. Bethune D. A., proceeded to VALENCOURT to take charge of Baths. Captain R. H. EWING appointed Lt. Col. in command.</p>	
<p><i>F. H. Cantlin</i> Lt. Col. Commanding 42nd Bn., Canadian Expeditionary Force.</p>				
<p>ORDERLY BOOK OCT 2 1916 42nd Bn. C.E.F.</p>				



CONFIDENTIAL.

1

WAR DIARY  
OF

42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> October to 31<sup>st</sup> October 1916

Volume 13

5

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 31st October, 1916.

Volume 13.

Diary Text

5 Pages.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>Original</u></p> <p style="text-align: center;"> <u>WAR</u>     <u>DIARY</u>            for the     month of  <u>OCTOBER</u>  <u>1916</u>  <u>42 ND.</u>   <u>BATTALION.</u>   <u>C. E. F.</u>  <u>6 TH.</u>   <u>ROYAL HIGHLANDERS.</u>            of  <u>CANADA</u> </p>	

# WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<b>1918</b>			
	<b>OCTOBER 1st.</b>		The Battalion was in billets in ALBERT and furnished working parties on the canal maison, Oylliers, and La Boiselle-gourcalette Road. Lieuts. C. B. Reilly and C. S. Martin, were transferred to England, wounded.	JOM JOM JOM
	<b>OCTOBER 2nd.</b>		The Battalion left ALBERT at 10 am., and marched to TARA HILL, and at 3.30 pm. moved forward and went into Brigade Reserve at CHALK PITS, arriving there about 5 p.m.	JOM
	<b>OCTOBER 3rd.</b>		In Brigade Reserve at CHALK PITS, providing working and carrying parties to the front line.	JOM
	<b>OCTOBER 4th.</b>		In Brigade Reserve at CHALK PITS, supplying working parties. Major McConnell, C.A. proceeded on command as camp commandant of Forward Area with Headquarters at ALBERT. 34 O.R. Reinforcements were received.	JOM
	<b>OCTOBER 5th.</b>		orders were received to take over front line and relieve the 42nd. Battalion. The G.O., a party of company officers, N.C.Os. and Scouts proceeded to the front to look over the ground and obtain information. While some of the party were at Battn. Hdqrs. a shell burst near the entrance to the dug-out and our scout officer, Lieut. Percy Ross, who had just obtained his commission was killed, and three Actg. company commanders, Lieuts. R. C. Evans, C. B. Topp, and J. K. Matheson, were wounded. The same evening the Battalion relieved the 42nd. Battalion in the Sector from the west Miramont Road to 23 road inclusive.	JOM
	<b>OCTOBER 6th.</b>		In the line. Early in the morning of the 6th a German attack was made on our bombing post in MEMORA Trench which was repulsed. On the same night a bombing party was sent out West Miramont Road proceeding a distance of 200 yards but found no trace of the enemy.	JOM
	<b>OCTOBER 7th.</b>		Relieved by the Royal Canadian Regiment and the 49th. Battn. and proceeded into Brigade Reserve CHALK PITS.	JOM

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OR  
 -----  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**  
 -----

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	1916 Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices																
			<p><b>OCTOBER 8TH.</b> At 9 am. urgent orders were received to return to Forward Area and to go into close support in PARCO GRABEN TRENCH. The battalion moved immediately and reached SUNKEN ROAD when orders were received to occupy MACDONNELL ROAD and CENTRE WAY. The same evening the Battalion took over the front line relieving the R.C.R. and 49th Batin.</p> <p>On the previous night a bombing post in KEMORA TRENCH had been driven in and our bombers immediately pushed forward and reoccupied it again.</p> <p>Mr. R. Willcock, Actg. O.C. "B" Coy. and Mr. D. P. Small were wounded.</p> <p><b>OCTOBER 9th.</b> An unusual incident happened in that the enemy sent out three parties bearing Red Cross flags and as there were a number of our wounded between the lines Mr. Montgomery took out a party of Stretcher Bearers and succeeded in bringing in eleven casualties belonging to the R.C.R. 49th, and 43rd. Battns., including Captain Purvis of the 43rd. Batin. whose foot had been shot off, and who had been dressed by enemy Stretcher Bearers.</p> <p>On the evening of the 9th the Battalion was relieved by the 1st and 2nd. C.M.Rs. relief being completed by 7.45 pm., and marched back to TARA HILL.</p> <p><b>CASUALTIES</b> during period 2nd. to 9th October, were as follows:</p> <table style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>KILLED</u></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><u>WOUNDED</u></th> <th></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Officers-----</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="text-align: center;">5</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>O.R.-----</td> <td style="text-align: center;">23</td> <td style="text-align: center;">65</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">TOTAL</td> <td style="text-align: center;">24</td> <td style="text-align: center;">70</td> <td style="text-align: right;">TOTAL 94</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		<u>KILLED</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>		Officers-----	1	5		O.R.-----	23	65		TOTAL	24	70	TOTAL 94	207
	<u>KILLED</u>	<u>WOUNDED</u>																		
Officers-----	1	5																		
O.R.-----	23	65																		
TOTAL	24	70	TOTAL 94																	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
			1916		
			OCTOBER 9TH. <u>PROMOTIONS</u> Continued.		
			Captain S. C. Horsworthy    to be Major Lieut. S. J. Mathewson,    "    Captain "    J. A. Mathewson,    "    " "    E. C. Evans,         "    "		
			<u>HONOURS &amp; AWARDS</u>		
			The Battalion received the following awards for the operations near Courcellette 15th/16th, September.		
			Awarded: <u>Military Cross.</u>		
			Captain S. C. Horsworthy. " R. L. H. King. " S. J. Mathewson. Lieut. R. Willcock. " J. K. Matheson.		
			Awarded: <u>D. C. M.</u>		
			418794 A/CSM. Riddell. C. T. 419010 SerGt. Owston. Chas.		
			Awarded: <u>Military Medal.</u>		
			419628 SerGt. W. Jamieson.    125376 L/Sgt. Jupe. E. 418096 "    H. E. Cook,            418753 Cpl. Morrison. L.A. 418126 "    H. Conlan.                418737 Pte. Papps. V. 419091 A/CSM. W. Westwood.    418427 A/CSM. Hojn. P. 418557 Cpl. H. T. Clark.        418018 A/Sgt. Hamer. H. 418437 SerGt. K. Matheson.		

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			1916 4	6
			<p>OCTOBER 10TH. Marched via SEHLIS to WARLOY and spent the night and following day in billets. Lieut. J. M. Gorgie was taken on strength of the Battalion, but left on command at base acting as conducting officer. 3 O.R. reinforcements were received.</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 12TH. Battalion left WARLOY at 1 pm. and marched via VADEMOURT - COMTAY - HARRISBART - to VAL DE MAISON. spent the night under canvas</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 13TH. Battalion marched via TALMAS - HAVERNAS - CAVAPLES - HALLOY to FERTEAUCOURT where we remained in billets for three days.</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 15TH. Officer reinforcements: Lieut. P. D. Macfie.</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 16TH. Battalion left FERTEAUCOURT at 8 am. and marched to RIDEAUCOURT via ST. LEGER and DOMART, remaining there until October 20th. 31 O.R. reinforcements were received.</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 17TH. Sergeant O. B. Jones was granted a commission dated 15th sept.</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 19TH. The following officer reinforcements were received. Lieut. Houghton, J. appointed Machine Gun officer " Stewart, J.C. " scout officer " Trent, C.E. attached to "B" company</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 20TH. Battalion left RIDEAUCOURT and marched to BEALCOURT via PROUVILLE and MAIRICOURT and went into billets. Major S. C. Horsworthy, (wounded) Lieut. C. B. Topp, (wounded) and Lieut. J. M. Gorgie, (sick) were transferred to England.</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 21ST. Marched via FROHEN LA GRAND - VILLERS L'HOPITAL - VACQUERIE DE BOUCQ - LIGHT SUR CANCHE - NUNC and went into billets at MONCHEUX.</p>	
			<p>OCTOBER 22ND. Battalion left MONCHEUX at 9 am. and marched to MINGOVILLE via MAISIÈRES - PÉVIN - TINQUES, and went into billets.</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			1916 8	7
			<p>OCTOBER 24TH. Lieut. E. W. Auld reported to Battalion and was appointed signalling officer. Lieut. R. Wilcock was transferred to England, wounded.</p>	JOM
			<p>OCTOBER 25TH. Battalion moved to Divisional Reserve at BOIS DES ALLEUX and were billeted in huts, remaining until October 28th.</p>	JOM
			<p>OCTOBER 28TH. Lieut. J. L. Waller, Lieut. E. C. Campbell, transferred to England, sick. Lieut. Montgomery appointed scout officer. Battalion left BOIS DES ALLEUX and moved up to NEUVILLE ST. VAAST, and spent the night in caves and cellars. Casualties 1 O.R. wounded.</p>	JOM
			<p>OCTOBER 29TH. Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. on left sector of Brigade Frontage, in front of the village of NEUVILLE ST. VAAST, taking over the line from La Salle Trench on the left to Vernon Trench on the right. B. D. and C Coys. in the front line, A company in support. Relief was completed by 3 pm. casualties 1 O.R. wounded.</p>	JOM
			<p>OCTOBER 30/31st. In the line. The following officers were transferred to England. Lieut. A. J. Parks (sick) " S. M. Bosworth, transferred to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe.</p>	JOM
			<p><i>Ros. Cantlie</i> .....Lieut. Col. Commanding 42nd Bn., Canadian Expeditionary Force.</p>	



CONFIDENTIAL.

80

WAR DIARY  
OF

42<sup>nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> November to 30<sup>th</sup> November 1916

Volume 14

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 20th November, 1916.

Volume 14.

Diary Text

2 pages.

WAR DIARY  
 or  
 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><u>Original</u></p> <p><u>WAR DIARY</u>  <u>for the month of</u>  <u>NOVEMBER</u>  <u>1916</u>  <u>42 ND. BATTALION C.E.F.</u>  <u>5 TH ROYAL HIGHLANDERS</u>  <u>of</u>  <u>CANADA</u></p>	

# WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	1916 Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 1st &amp; 2nd.</b> In the line. 10 O.R. Reinforcements were received. Major C.A. McEganell appointed town Major of Aubigny and savy.</p>	
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 3rd.</b> The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. in left sub-section, and moved to Brigade Reserve, Neuville st Vaast.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 4th to 8th</b> IN Brigade Reserve, Neuville st Vaast, and furnished working parties. Casualties. 1 O.R. Killed, and 4 O.R. wounded. Took over the front Line on the night of the 8th, relieving the P.P.C.L.I.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 8th to 12th.</b> In the trenches. Lieuts. Grenier and Pontaux were transferred to 2nd Battalion. Lieut. H.E. Milton. 7th Canadian trench mortar battery, struck off strength of unit. 7 O.R. Reinforcements were received.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 13th.</b> The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. and moved to Divisional Reserve at Bois-des-auxes. Casualties on preceding tour 1 O.R. killed, and 2 O.R. wounded.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 14th.</b> 3 O.R. reinforcements were received.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 15th/17th</b> Promotion. Capt. G.J. Mathewson to be 1st Lt/Major in Divisional Reserve.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 18th.</b> The Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. in the left sub-section.</p>	COB.
			<p><u>Promotions.</u> Capt. R.L.H. Ewing to be Temp/Major 3-7-16. Capt. E.R. Pease to be Temp/Major 3-7-16. Capt. G.B. Wilson (deceased) to be Temp/Major 3-7-16</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 19th.</b> Received 1 O.R. Reinforcement.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 20th</b> Lieut. Col. Gaultie proceeded on a course to Gen. Corps. Headquarters. Major R.H.L. Ewing appointed acting G.O. in his absence.</p>	COB.
			<p><b>NOVEMBER 22nd</b> Relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. in the left sub-section, and moved to Brigade Reserve, Neuville st Vaast.</p>	COB.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p>NOVEMBER 26th./27th            Yeast. 22 O.R. Reinforcements were received.            NOVEMBER 28th.            left sub-section, relieving the P.P.C.L.I.            promotions. Lieut. G.B. TAPP to be Captain,            16-9-16.            Lieut. H.B. Finley, to be acting            Captain, 15-10-16.            NOVEMBER 29th/30th In the line. Lieut. G.S. Martin returned to            Battalion, and was posted to "B" Coy. Lieut. Stewart. R.W.            reported, and was temporarily posted to "B" Coy.</p>	<p>P.M.            P.M.            P.M.</p>
			<p><i>Lt. Col.</i>  <i>42<sup>nd</sup> Bn A.H. J.C.</i></p>	

CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY  
OF

43<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> December to 31<sup>st</sup> December 1916

Volume 15

# WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<u>Sheet 1.</u>	
			<u>DECEMBER 1-2nd 1916.</u>	
			In the trenches - Left sub-section- LA POLIE SECTOR Casualties for the tour- 2 O.R. wounded.	
			<u>DECEMBER 3rd. 1916.</u>	
			The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. and moved back into Divisional Reserve at BOIS-BES-ALLIEUX. Lieut. P. Macdonnell reported back to the Battalion, and was posted to Headquarters.	
			<u>DECEMBER 4-5. 1916.</u>	
			In Divisional Reserve. Training was carried on during period of rest, special attention being given to instructions in bombing, about 100 O.R. attended the four day course at the Brigade Bombing school. 12 men per Company were also detailed daily to take special course in wiring.	
			<u>DECEMBER 7th. 1916.</u>	
			In the morning the Battalion was inspected by Act. Brigadier. Lieut-Col. J. Greisback. The following officer reinforcements were received. Lieut. A. S. Cole. Lieut. J. F. Downey. Lieut. F. C. Gillingwater. Lieut. A. J. McIntyre. Lieut. F. H. Pond. Lieut. F. L. Phillips. Lieut. M. A. Orford.	
			<u>DECEMBER 8th 1916.</u>	
			The Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. in the trenches on the night of the 8th taking over left sub-section. 150 un-trained O.R. reinforcements were received, and were attached to the 7th Brigade Training Battalion for instruction.	
			<u>DECEMBER 9-13. 1916.</u>	
			In the trenches. All available men were employed on constructing deep dug out in P. 76 and clearing and revetting trenches, in addition to their regular duties. On the night of the 11th Lieuts. Montgomery and Macdonald with a small party proceeded out and bombed the enemy post between Duffield and Durand craters. The enemy retreated with hand grenades and Lieut. Montgomery was slightly wounded. On the following night an organized attack	
			continued.	

WAR DIARY  
OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Type heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information <i>Co-operation with the 11th</i>	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p>Summary of Events and Information: <i>Co-operation with the 11th</i>            Was made on the same post. A few bombs were thrown by our party and the sentries immediately retired. Lieut. Macdonald, Bombing Officer, and 1 other went then entered the post and followed for a short distance.            Casualties for the tour:- Lieut L.C. Montgomery &amp; 5 other ranks.</p>	
	<u>DECEMBER 13th. 1916.</u>		<p>The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. and moved into Brigade Reserve, Neuville-St-Vaast.            Capt. A.A. McKay transferred to No. 2. C.C.C.S. Poperinghe and Capt. W. Hale reported and was attached as Medical Officer.</p>	
	<u>DECEMBER 14th 1916.</u>		<p>Lieut. Col. S.S. Cantlie proceeded on leave; Major R.L.H. Ewing taking command of the Battalion in his absence.</p>	
	<u>DECEMBER 15-18. 1916</u>		<p>In Brigade Reserve, Neuville-St-Vaast. Furnished working parties for the left section.            Casualties:- 4. O.R. wounded.</p>	
	<u>DECEMBER 19 - 1916.</u>		<p>In the afternoon Battalion took over front line trenches in the left sub-section, relieving the P.P.C.L.I.</p>	
	<u>DECEMBER 21-23. 1916.</u>		<p>In the trenches. Work was carried on clearing and re-vetting the P. Line and saps leading to craters. On the night of the 23rd - 76 O.R. from the Training Battalion came up to the trenches for instruction, remaining for 48 hours. During their tour good progress was made in consolidating the new crater between Misa &amp; Birkin.            Casualties for the tour- NIL.</p>	
	<u>DECEMBER 24-1916.</u>		<p>The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I. and moved into Divisional Reserve at BOIS-DES-ALLEUX</p>	
	<u>DECEMBER 25-28. 1916.</u>		<p>The usual training was carried on during this period. Christmas was observed on the 26th. The afternoon was given over to the Battalion as a half holiday, and all companies had their Christmas dinners with the huts, and in the evening all ranks attended a most enjoyable performance given by the P.P.C.L.I. Concert Company.</p>	

continued.



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regts., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p style="text-align: center;"><b>Sheet 3.</b></p> <p><u>DECEMBER 29th-1916.</u> The Battalion relieved P.P.C.L.I. and took over the trenches from the left sub-section.</p> <p><u>DECEMBER 30-31. 1916.</u> <del>Went</del> <sup>Went</sup> in the line. Lieut. Col. Floyd 26th Reserve bn reported and was attached for instruction. The following day he was admitted to hospital, suffering from a sprained wrist.</p> <p>Casualties. 1.O.R. killed. 1.O.R. wounded.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>W. J. G. General Lieut. Col.</i>  <i>Canadian Expeditionary Force</i></p>	<p><i>W. J. G.</i></p> <p><i>W. J. G.</i></p>

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 31st December, 1916.

Volume 15.

Diary Text

3 Pages.

CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY  
OF

1

4<sup>2nd</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division

From 1<sup>st</sup> January to 31<sup>st</sup> January 1917

Volume 16

x

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

42nd. Canadian Battalion, C.E.F. Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	2	Remarks and references to Appendices
	January 1st,	1917	<p>At 1.55 am. an organized raiding party consisting of Lieuts. MacNaughton and Martin, Sergts. Bealer, Smith, and Corporal Plowe, Ptes. Maquard, Sedgwick, Richardson and Hepburn left Common Sap. Lieut. MacNaughton went out in advance and placed a covering party of bombers about five yards in front of the German wire in the centre of the gap between Common and Birkin craters. <del>Lieut.</del> Lieut. Martin, followed with Sergt. Bealer, Sergt. Smith and Pte. Maquard, and on reaching the covering party they were joined by Lieut. MacNaughton. The party then proceeded round the lip of Common Crater. They worked their way through the enemy wire and entered his trench at approximately 3.28 a.m. 45944. They proceeded along the trench for a short distance, and on account of the mud being so heavy it was decided to split the party, and move along the parapet and parados. Lieut. MacNaughton and Sergt. Bealer followed the parados, and Lieut. Martin, Sergt. Smith and Pte. Maquard the parapet, until they got to a point near a junction with a communication trench immediately to the right of Birkin Crater where an enemy post was suspected. After waiting at this junction for about 20 minutes, two enemy sentries were observed, one in an improvised shelter, the other in the trench, the latter a moving patrol. As the sentry approached the raiding party, Sergt. Bealer slipped into the trench, held him up at the point of a revolver and forced him to surrender. At the same time Pte. Maquard assuming to be the Sergt. Major called the second sentry from his shelter. The latter came to the entrance and finding himself surrounded dropped his rifle, and threw up his hands. The party then proceeded back and reached <del>the</del> trenches with two prisoners at 3.05 am. without casualties. Both prisoners belonged to the 23rd. R.I.R.</p> <p>Among others the following congratulatory messages were received:</p> <p>From Canadian Corps Commander:— "The Corps Commander wishes to congratulate the 42nd. Battalion on its most successful and enterprising raid"</p> <p>From G.O.C. 3rd. Canadian Division:— "Please convey to O.C. 42nd. Battalion and to those who took part hearty congratulations and good luck".</p>		<p>16</p> <p>207 2072</p>
	January 2nd,	1917	Major S. C. Norsworthy returned from England and took command of the Battalion.		
	January 3rd,	1917.	The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. and moved into Brigade Reserve, Neuville St. Vaaste.		

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, C.E.F. Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in P. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	3	Remarks and references to Appendices
	January 3rd.	1917	Lieut. R. Wilcock returned to the Battalion from England and was posted to B Company. Continued Lieut. L. C. Montgomery was discharged from hospital. 250 O.R. Reinforcements were received.		COM
	January 5th-	7th.	In Brigade Reserve. Finished working parties for the left section. 1917 1 O.R. Wounded.		COM
	January 8th,	1917	The Battalion relieved the P.P.C.L.I. in the trenches taking over the left sub-section. B.S.M. Macfarlane was slightly wounded, and admitted to hospital.		COM
	January 9th-	10th.	In the trenches. All available men, over and above those required for sentry duty were 1917 used as working parties, building dug-outs and clearing and retvetting trenches. 3 O.R. Slightly wounded.		COM
	January 11th	1917.	About 5.30 pm. a patrol consisting of Lieut. Studd and 4 O.R. proceeded out from gap between Birkin and Patricia craters and worked their way through three lines of German wire and entered a sap leading to the enemy post on Patricia Crater. The party rushed this post but found it unoccupied. They remained in the sap about an hour and were forced to return on account of the bright moonlight.		COM
	January 12th,	1917.	Decorations were awarded to the undermentioned O.R. for the part they took in the raid on the morning of January 1st., as follows:- <u>MILITARY MEDAL</u> 418710 Sergt. H. V. A. Bealer, 418372 " G. Smith, 418698 Corpl. A.W. Plowe, <u>BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL</u> 427024 Pte. A. Maquard,		COM
	January 13th,	1917	The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. and went back into Divisional Reserve at BOIS DES ALLEUX. Casualties for the preceeding tour 5 O.R. wounded.		COM

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, C.E.F. Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	4	Remarks and references to Appendices
	January 14th,	1917	The usual clean up parades were held, deficiencies and Church Parades in the morning, and bath and pay parades during the day.		JMS
	January 15th,	1917	Training was carried on daily. Special classes were organized for instruction in Bombing to 17th. and Wiring.		JMS
	January 18th,	1917	On the afternoon of the 18th the Battalion took over the trenches from the P.P.C.L.I. The same day 11 N.C.O. reinforcements arrived from England and were taken on strength supernumary to the establishment.		JMS
	January 19th,	20th,	In the trenches. Special attention was paid to wiring the Battalion frontage. The saps 21st, & 22nd. leading from the observation line to the craters were wired on both sides and the post made more secure. The weather was cold and work was also carried on repairing and retetting trenches.		
	1917		January 20th. Lieut. G.H. Savage arrived from England and was taken on strength. January 21st. Lieut. G. S. Ashby reported to the Battalion on transfer from the 14th Canadian Battalion, and was taken on strength.		JMS
	January 23rd.	1917	The Battalion was relieved by P.P.C.L.I. on the night of the 23rd. and moved into Brigade Reserve, Neuville St. Vaaste. Lieut. K. A. Campbell was shot through the head by an enemy sniper on the morning of the 23rd. and was instantly killed, while standing in the Vernon post. Lieut. Col. G. S. Cantlie and Major S. J. Matthewson were struck off strength on transfer to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe, for the purpose of going on leave to Canada. Casualties for the tour. Killed 1 Officer 2 O.R. Died of wounds 1 O.R. Wounded 7 O.R.		JMS
	January 24th-27th.	1917	In Brigade Reserve. Furnished about 400 men per day for Brigade working parties, on the left sub-section. On the 26th Captain C. B. Topp and Lieut. J.T.L. Shumarrived back from England, and were taken on strength. The same day Major C.C. McClellan was struck off strength on transfer to Canadian Training Division, Shorncliffe.		JMS

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
				5
	January 28th, 1917		The Battalion moved into the trenches taking over the line from the P.P.C.L.I.	
	January 29th-30th		Work was carried on wiring the "P" Line, and repairing wire on the Battalion frontage. 31st. Other parties were furnished re-building and enlarging deep dugouts on the left company frontage. Special work was also carried on repairing and retetting P.74 and P.75.	
	January 31st.		The following additional decorations were awarded to the undermentioned Officers for the part they took in the raid of the morning of January 1st. 1917.	
			<u>THE MILITARY CROSS.</u>	
			Lieut. J. McNaughton, " C.S. Martin,	
			Casualties for the 3 Days	
			Killed	2 O.R.
			Died of wounds	1 O.R.
			Wounded	2 O.R.
			<i>Honourworthy</i>	

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 31st January, 1917.

Volume 16.

Diary Text

4 Pages.



CONFIDENTIAL.

1

WAR DIARY  
OF

*48<sup>th</sup> Canadian Battalion - 3<sup>rd</sup> Canadian Division*

*From 1<sup>st</sup> February to 28<sup>th</sup> February 1917*

*Volume 17*

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Cdn. Division,  
from 1st to 28th February, 1917.

Volume 17.

Diary Text

8 Pages.

## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battn., R.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	2	Remarks and references to Appendices									
	1917													
	FEBRUARY	1st.	In the trenches. Left Sub-section of LA FOLIE Sector, North-East of Neuville St. Vaast. Lieut. C. F. Gifford proceeded On Command as Instructor, Infantry Training School, Harve Lieut. R. G. Arcand, struck off strength, detached to General List, Headquarters, C.T.D. Shorncliffe.		185									
	FEBRUARY	2nd.	The Battalion was relieved by the P.P.C.L.I., and moved back to Divisional Reserve, BOIS DES ALLEUX. Total casualties for the tour: <table style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>O.R.</td> <td>Killed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>O.R.</td> <td>Died of wounds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>O.R.</td> <td>Wounded.</td> </tr> </table>	2	O.R.	Killed	1	O.R.	Died of wounds	4	O.R.	Wounded.		185
2	O.R.	Killed												
1	O.R.	Died of wounds												
4	O.R.	Wounded.												
	FEBRUARY	3rd. to 6th.	Training was carried on during the period we were in reserve. Usual Pay and Church Parades were held. Baths were not available being out of order owing to extreme cold weather. 418445 L/Cpl. Aldridge, (Attached to Brigade Bombers) was awarded Military Medal for "Bravery in the Field"		185 185									
	FEBRUARY	7th.	On the evening of the 7th the Battalion moved into the trenches relieving the P.P.C.L.I.		185									
	FEBRUARY	8th. to 12th.	In the trenches. Work was carried on enlarging and improving deep dugouts, repairing trenches, etc. Due to the extreme cold weather and frozen condition of the ground little work could be done revetting. Special parties were engaged nightly in wiring the P Line and entrances to the Tunnel. Major Bullock Webster of the 54th Reserve Bn. was attached for six days Course of Instruction. On the afternoon of the 12th 1 O.R. was killed and 4 O.R. wounded by a direct hit on trench P. 75. The same night 1 O.R. was killed and 2 O.R. wounded while wiring along P 78 by an enemy dart.		185 185 185									
	FEBRUARY	13th.	At 9.15 O'Clock on the morning of the 13th, the Battalion carried out a successful raid on the enemy's trenches.		185									

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	3	Remarks and references to Appendices
	FEBRUARY 13th. Continued.		<p>OBJECT:- To inflict casualties, destroy dugouts and obtain identification.  <u>Frontage covered 275 yards.</u>            Enemy wire and crater posts were damaged by organized shoot with Stokes and 2" Trench Mortars for several days previous, and our wire was cut on the night previous to the raid, and left in position ready to be withdrawn.            At 9.13 am. a barrage of No.23 Mills Rifle Grenades was opened by 19 Rifle Grenadiers stationed in our Crater Posts.            At 9.15 am. Artillery barrage opened and 2 Officers and 48 O.R. divided into four parties raided enemy crater posts and observation line trench opposite Durand, Duffield, Grange, and Patricia Craters.            Party "D" Lieut. Gillingwater and 14 O.R. crossed between Durand and Duffield Craters. While crossing Lieut. Gillingwater was wounded in the side by a bomb but continued with his party which, on reaching the enemy Observation Line divided as arranged, a party of 7 under C6rpl. Baird moving to the right, the balance - Lieut. Gillingwater and 7 O.R. - to the left. The latter met with determined resistance from an enemy party using rifle fire and cylindrical stick bombs. Lieut. Gillingwater, pushing past his bayonet man, led the attack on this party, two of whom he killed with his revolver before being again severely wounded in the foot, leg, and arm, by a bomb. The enemy then fled leaving two dead in the trench. No.193598 Pte. C. L. Myles carried out Lieut. Gillingwater on his back, while Ptes. Whitehead, C.A.Myles, Scout Sedgwick, and one other remained as covering party. As the covering party were withdrawing a party of Huns who had just emerged from a dugout in a cross trench attacked them with cylindrical stick bombs but very fortunately they were joined at this moment by Lieut. Saythe, C.F.A., who, after reporting the correctness of the barrage to his Group Headquarters, had pushed forward in order to gain better observation. Lieut. Saythe led the party in an attack on the Huns killing two and wounding another with his revolver. The remainder of the Huns fled. The dugout, which proved to be a large one with five entrances, and plentiful evidence, in the shape of movement inside, and rifles stacked outside, of being occupied, was then dealt with, with No.5 Mills Grenades and two Stokes Bombs. The Party then withdrew by point of entry.            Casualties... Lieut. Gillingwater and 2 O.R. wounded.            The right section of the party under Corpl. Baird pushed forward around the rear of Duffield Crater to enemy post which they found unoccupied, but smoke was seen coming from the Chimney of a nearby dugout. Mills bombs were dropped down the chimney and Stokes in the entrance. After establishing touch with the party on their right, the section withdrew by point of entry,</p>		<p>185 185 185 185 185 185</p>
<p>1875 Wt. W393/26 1,000,000 475 I.R.C. &amp; A. A.D.S.S./Form C.2118</p>					

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	4	Remarks and references to Appendices
FEBRUARY 15th Continued.	Myles.		Cpl. Baird carrying out Lieut. Gillingwater, who had been handed over to him by Pte.		
			Party "C" 9 O.R. under Sergt. Rowland, crossed between Duffield and Durand Craters and turning right proceeded along trench until they reached a large dugout with three entrances. One Hun was emerging with a rifle in his hand, and as he failed to respond quickly to an order to surrender, Sergt. Rowland shot and killed him. The dugout was then thoroughly bombed with "p" bombs, Mills No. 5 Grenades and three Stokes Bombs. Party then proceeded along trench until touch was effected with parties on both flanks, after which they returned by point of entry, after exploding a fourth Stokes bomb in the trench.		
			Party "B" 12 O.R. under Sergt. G. Smith, leaving from Patricia Post No. 2 entered enemy lines at 8.28 a.m. 30.98 and proceeded left until a junction was effected with party "C" on their left. They passed 3 dugout entrances, in all of which "P" bombs followed by Stokes bombs were thrown. They encountered no enemy in the trench, there were no enemy in the stairways of the dugouts, and they are unable to state definitely that they were occupied, although they appeared to be good deep dugouts with timbered entrances. Party returned to our lines by Patricia No. 2 at 9.23 a.m. There were no casualties.		
			"A" Party consisting of Lieut. Small and 13 O.R., leaving from Patricia No. 1 Post entered enemy line at about 8.29 a.m. 45.85 where the party divided. Party of 5 under Sergeant Maxworthy proceeded to the right as far as fork in trench where two entrances to deep dugouts, which had every appearance of being much used, were bombed with "P" bombs and Stokes. This party as arranged halted at this point, forming a covering party until 9.27 (2 minutes after the hour fixed for general withdrawal) when they returned to our lines through point of entry. Balance of party under Lieut. Small proceeded left to a point where a loop in the trench exists (dimly shown in aeroplane photograph, dated 23.1.17 and which had not been expected). Party consisting of Scout Wilson, Pte. C. Dion and B'sher McAndrew went to the right, and the remainder under Lieut. Small to the left. The party under Scout Wilson came upon two Huns standing in a small shelter off the trench, one of whom Pte. Dion, who was leading, shot and wounded in the leg, immediately after which both surrendered. A little further on the party came upon a deep dugout which was dealt with by No. 5 Mills bombs and Stokes. The party under Lieut. Small also came upon a deep dugout with one Hun taking shelter in the entrance. He was summoned to come out but appeared to reach for a bomb and Lieut. Small shot him. The dugout which had several entrances was treated with P bombs, Mills, and Stokes.		

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

SHEET 4

WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Batta. R.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
	FEBRUARY 13th.		Lieut. Small's and Scout Wilson's parties re-united at the North end of the loop, and almost immediately afterwards came in touch with party "B" under Sergt. Smith. They then returned to our lines through Grange Crater. No Huns were seen in the trench by this party except the two who were made prisoners, and the one killed in dugout entrance.		
	Continued.		Casualties 2 O.R. slightly wounded.		
			Total Casualties:		
			Lieut. Gillingwater, Severely wounded		
			" Small, Slightly wounded		
			4 Other Ranks Wounded		
			4 Other Ranks Slightly Wounded(Remained at duty)		
			Following recommendations were submitted:		
			<u>For MILITARY CROSS</u>		
			Lieut. P. C. Gillingwater,		
			" D. P. Small,		
			<u>For VICTORIA CROSS</u>		
			193598 Pte. C. L. Myles,		
			<u>For D. C. M.</u>		
			418316 Sgt. H. Rowland,		
			418372 " George Smith, M.M.		
			427567 Pte. W. G. Whitehead,		
			193455 " C. A. Myles,		
			<u>For M. M.</u>		
			141153 Pte. (Act. Cpl.) W.H. Baird,		
			736129 " (Act. Sergt) R.D. Muxworthy,		

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	6	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<b>FEBRUARY</b>	13th.	Recommendations submitted <u>continued</u> : Continued.		
			<u>For M. M. _____</u>		
			441875 Pte. P. H. Wilson,		
			794262 " C. Dion,		
			409533 " A. M. McAndrew,		
			418723 Cpl. J. W. Cave,		
			418244 Pte. W. Handley,		
	<b>FEBRUARY</b>	14th.	On the night of the 14th the Battalion was relieved in the trenches by the 22nd. Can. Battalion, and moved into new huts at <b>BOIS DES ALLEUX</b> . Total casualties for the tour:		
			3 O.R. Killed		
			1 O.R. Died of wounds		
			Lt. Gillingwater and 17 O.R. Wounded		
			" Small " 4 O.R. Slightly Wounded (remained at duty)		
	<b>FEBRUARY</b>	15th.	Battalion left the huts at <b>BOIS DES ALLEUX</b> at 11. am. and marched to training area at <b>DIVION</b> , via <b>CAMBLAIN L'ABBE - EXTREME-CAUCHE - RANCHICOURT</b> , and <b>HOUDAIN</b> , arriving in billets about 5 pm.		
	<b>FEBRUARY</b>	16th.	General Nivelles, Commander-in-Chief of the French Armies of the North and North-east, visited Canadian C'rops and inspected the Battalion along with the other Battalions of the Brigade, at 11 am.		
	<b>FEBRUARY</b>	17th.	Usual parades were held for deficiencies etc.		
	<b>FEBRUARY</b>	18th.	Church Parades were held in the Y.M.C.A. Hut, <b>DIVION</b> , B and C Companies at 10 am. A and D Companies and Headquarters at 10.45 am. The following Decorations were awarded:		
			<u>The Distinguished Conduct Medal</u>		
			418710 Sergeant Bealer, H.V.A.		
			418239 C.S.M. Kennedy, G.W.		

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

SHEET 6

 or  
 INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	7	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<b>FEBRUARY 18th.</b>		Major Bullock Webster ceased to be attached and returned to England.		
	Continued.				
	<b>FEBRUARY 19th.</b>		Special training was begun in accordance with Syllabus. Training hours daily 8.45 to 11.45 am. in the morning, and 1.30 to 4.30 in the afternoon, special attention being given to the new platoon organization, and a certain portion of each days training devoted to its formation.		
			Major E. C. Weyman reported from England and was taken on strength of the Battalion as Supernumerary.		
			Following honours were published:		
			Mentioned in Sir Douglas Haig's despatches dated 13.11.16, for "Distinguished and gallant services, and devotion to duty"		
			Light. Col. Cantlie, G. S. D.S.O.		
			Major McLennan, B. D.S.O.		
			Captain Wilson, C.B. (Killed in Action)		
			Lieut. Routledge, A. (Died of wounds)		
	<b>FEBRUARY 20th.</b>		In the morning training was carried out in accordance with Syllabus. Bath parades to HOUDAIN were held in the afternoon.		
	<b>FEBRUARY 21st.</b>		On completion of the Bombing Pit, instructional classes were commenced in throwing Hand and Rifle Grenades, under the supervision of the Bombing Officer.		
	<b>FEBRUARY 22nd.</b>		The Motor Machine Gun Coy's. range was placed at our disposal and Lewis Gun Crews from all companies were given instruction and practice in firing the Lewis Gun while on the move.		
	<b>FEBRUARY 24th.</b>		Undermentioned decorations were awarded for the raid of the 13th inst.		
			<u>MILITARY MEDAL</u>		
			418316 Sergt. H. Rowland,		
			427567 Pte. W. Whitehead,		
			193455 " C.A. Myles,		
			<u>BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL</u>		
			418372 Sgt. Geo. Smith,		



Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

OR  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	8	Remarks and references to Appendices
	FEBRUARY 24th.		In the afternoon of the 24th we defeated the Royal Canadian Regiment in the Divisional Continued. Football Competition. Score: 4 - Nil.		
	FEBRUARY 25th.		Brigade parade was held for the purpose of presenting decorations. Corps and Divisional Commanders were present. The following members of the 42nd. Bn. were presented with ribbons by the Corps Commander:		
			Major S. C. Norsworthy, M.C.		
			" R.L.H. Ewing, "		
			Captain J. K. Beveridge, "		
			Lieut. J. McNaughton, "		
			" C. S. Martin, "		
			" R. Willcock, "		
		418239	Coy. S.M. Kennedy, G.W. D.C.M. -M.M.		
		418010	Sergt. Oaston, C.A. M.M.		
		418009	" Tank, R. M.M.		
		418372	" Smith, Geo. M.M. & Bar to M.M.		
		418316	" Rowland, H. M.M.		
		418698	A/Sergt. Plowe, A.W. M.M.		
		50754	A/Corpl. Urcubart, J. M.M.		
		427024	Private Macquard, A. Bar to M.M.		
		427567	" Whitehead, W. M.M.		
	FEBRUARY 25th.		In the afternoon our Football team defeated the 49th. Battalion in the Divisional Football Competition. Score 3 - 0.		
	FEBRUARY 26th.		In the morning Training was carried on in accordance with Syllabus. In the afternoon the Battalion marched to MARLE-LES-MINES and attended football game between our Battalion Football Team and the winner of the 9th Brigade. The game ended in our favour after 20 minutes overtime. Score: 2 - 1.		
	FEBRUARY 27th.		Lieut. R. W. G. Hale arrived as Reinforcement from 143th Battalion and was taken on strength.		

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	9	Remarks and references to Appendices
	FEBRUARY 28th.		<p>In the morning the Battalion attended demonstration by the special platoon at the practice trenches near BRUAY. In the afternoon a route march was held to the football field near MARLE-LES-MINES for the final game in the Divisional Football Competition. The game was hotly contested and resulted in a win for our team after 20 minutes overtime play. Score 1 - 0. After the game the team was presented with a silver Eagle by the Divisional Commander.</p> <p>Lieuts. G. Sheffield and A. W. Haldimand arrived as Reinforcements from 148th Battalion and were taken on strength.</p> <p style="text-align: right;"><i>Sturgesworth</i> Comdg 42nd <sup>Major</sup> <i>Can Bn</i></p>		<p><i>162</i> <i>163</i> <i>164</i></p>

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

OF

*42<sup>nd</sup>*

CANADIAN BATTALION.

*03<sup>rd</sup>*

CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM

*1<sup>st</sup> March*

TO

*31<sup>st</sup> March 1917*

VOLUME 18.

WITH APPENDICES.

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division.

from 1st to 31st March, 1917.

Volume 18.

Diary Text

6 Pages.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.E.C.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
MARCH	1917			
March	1st*		<p>At DIVION. During our stay here the companies were formed up into three platoons each, according to the new platoon organization. The training consisted of tactical exercises over taped trenches in the morning, the afternoon being devoted to Squad Drill, Platoon Drill, Route Marches, and Specialists' training. Lewis Gunners were trained at Eaton Machine Gun Coy. range La Cauchiette, and Bombers and Rifle Grenadiers had practice on alternate days at bombing pit dug in rear of our Transport Lines.</p> <p>Two football matches between Officers were played in the afternoon, the P.P.C.L.I. defeating the R.C.R., and the 42nd. Cdn. Battalion defeating the 49th Cdn. Bn. Score: 2-1</p> <p>Lieut. Pond, F.H. and Major McConnell, C.A. were struck off strength, being transferred to England, sick.</p>	2 com com com
March	2nd.		Captain J. A. Mathewson rejoined Battalion from England.	
March	3rd.		<p>A football match between the Officers of the P.P.C.L.I. and the 42nd. Cdn. Bn. resulted in a win for the former, score 2-0.</p> <p>The undermentioned decorations were awarded:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>THE MILITARY CROSS</u> Lieut. P. C. Gillingwater,</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>THE DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL</u> 193598 Pte. Myles, C. L.</p>	
March	4th.		Church Parades were held at Y.M.C.A. Hut and R.C. Church DIVION.	
March	5th.		The Battalion carried on usual training.	
March	6th.		<p>Major E. C. Weyman (Supernumerary) struck off strength on proceeding to 3rd. Cdn. Entrenching Battalion.</p> <p>1 O.R. Reinforcement arrived.</p>	com com com
March	7th/8th.		<p>The Battalion carried on the usual training.</p> <p>Lieut. Col. A. A. Magee, O.C., 20th Reserve Bn., Shoreham, for a months tour.</p>	attached com

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

SHEET 24

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	3	Remarks and references to Appendices
	March 9th.		In the afternoon the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was reviewed by Sir Robert Borden, Premier of Canada. The Brigadier commended the Brigade on its showing.		com.
	March 10th.		The Battalion carried out the usual training.		com.
	March 11th.		Church Parades were held at the Y.M.C.A. Hut and R.C. Parish Church, DIVION. Lieut. E. J. Donnelly (148th Cdn. Bn.) and 43 O.R. reinforcements reported and were taken on strength.		com.
	March 12th.		Lieut. L. H. Biggar (148th Cdn. Bn.) reported and was taken on strength.		com.
	March 13th.		Major General L. J. Lipsett, E.M.G. Cmdg. 3rd. Canadian Division, inspected the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in attack <del>and</del> taped trenches.		com.
	March 14th.		Sir Julian Byng, K.C.B., K.C.M.G., M.V.O. cmdg. Canadian Corps, inspected the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in attack in the morning. In the afternoon the Battalion marched to BRUAY Theatre to attend a Cinema Programme. Lieut. H. L. Hoyles (1st Reinforcing Coy. 5th R.H.C.) reported and was taken on strength.		com.
	March 15th/16th/17th.		Usual training was carried on by the Battalion.		com.
	March 18th.		Church parades were held as usual.		com.
	March 19th.		Lieut. J. deLotbiniere proceeded on temporary duty as Town Major of CALOUNE-RICOUART.		com.
	March 20th.		The Battalion (less C and D Coy.) had received orders to move to Dumbell Camp, South of VILLERS AU BOIS, but at the last moment these were cancelled owing to lack of accommodation.		com.
	March 21st.		The Battalion (less C and D Coy.) marched to Dumbell Camp, South of VILLERS AU BOIS via HUITZ - BARLIN - BOIS D'OLHAIN - VERDREL - GRAND SERVINS, moving off at 10 a.m. and reaching destination at 5 p.m. 53 O.R. Reinforcements were received.		com.

## WAR DIARY

SHEET 3

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place 1917	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
March	22nd.		+ The Battalion (less C and D Coys.) relieved part of the 53th Cdn. Battalion in the front line LA FOLIE SECTOR.	J.M.
March	23rd.		C and D Companies marched from DIVION to Dumbell Camp via route taken by balance of Battalion two days previously. 3 O.R. Reinforcements reported.	J.M.
			At 3 a.m. the enemy blew a large crater on our front to the North of and adjoining DURAND. Captain C. B. Topp, Lieut. D. F. Small, and a party of Lewis Gunners immediately rushed out and occupied the highest point of our lip. The party was subjected to heavy enfilade rifle fire from the vicinity of BROADMARSH, and after having remained for some time and suffered a casualty they withdrew to a less prominent position. Owing to lack of time it was impossible to put out a sap and establish posts before dawn.	J.M.
			The blowing of the mine itself caused us no casualties although thirty yards of our front line trench was destroyed. A party was immediately set to work to clear it out.	J.M.
			Lieut. L. C. Montgomery was slightly wounded while making observations of the crater, and Lieut. D. F. Small was also slightly wounded while making a reconnaissance of our lip.	J.M.
			During the day careful observations of the new crater were made and it was found that it extended from DURAND in a Northerly direction to a distance of about 250 yards.	J.M.
			At dusk our lip was scouted by a party under Lieut. A. J. McIntyre, who reported that it consisted of a series of four separate craters which merged into one. This was afterwards confirmed.	J.M.
			At dusk also work was begun on its consolidation. All available men from the front and support line companies, in addition to 120 men which were brought up from our reserve companies in BOIS DES ALLEUX, were put to work under the supervision of Captain Topp and Lieut. Trout. "Topp Sap" was dug, extending from our old Observation Line to the foot of the new crater. A post was also established near the Southern end.	J.M.
March	24th.		On the night of the 24th 100 men were again brought up from our reserve companies to assist our Support and Front Line Companies in continuing the work of consolidation. A large party under Lieut. H. B. Trout were distributed along under our lip and com-	J.M.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form G. 2118

SHEET 4

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
March 24th	1917	Cont.	<p>menced the new LONGFELLOW Trench. Four further posts were also got under way.</p> <p>A party under Capt. E. B. Finley started on the new Communication Trench running from our old front line to a point on the new crater about 150 yards North of its Southern edge. The enemy kept up a heavy rifle fire from the vicinity of BROADMARCH and work was carried on under very trying conditions. The work was however, pushed forward with all possible speed and the consolidation was well under way before dawn.</p> <p>Lieut. R. W. Stewart was mortally wounded while carrying a wounded man to a place of safety, 3 O.R. were killed and 4 O.R. wounded during the operations.</p>		
March 25th			<p>At 3.30 in the afternoon Lieut. Stewart, R.W. died of his wounds at the 42nd Casualty Clearing Station, Abigny.</p> <p>On the night of the 25th work was continued in the consolidation of LONGFELLOW Crater. A party of 100 men were brought up from the reserve companies at BOIS DES ALLEUX to assist. All trenches and saps were deepened and the posts were more firmly established.</p> <p>Lieut. McIntyre and a small party of Scouts made a reconnaissance of the Northern end of the crater and found it was unoccupied by the enemy.</p> <p>Wiring parties were sent out and our extreme left post and dangerous points of the lip were wired.</p>		
March 26th.			<p>Our Snipers were very active in the early morning. Snipers plates had been put in LONGFELLOW Post No. 1. during the night which enabled our Snipers to enfilade BUMP Trench, where seven hits were made in the early morning. At night consolidation of the crater was carried on large parties being again brought up from our reserve companies. The trenches and saps were deepened and improved and the new posts more firmly established. Notwithstanding the bright moonlight wiring parties managed to make our wire more secure.</p> <p>Summer time came into force, the clock being advanced one hour at 11 p.m.</p>		
March 27th.			<p>C Coy. relieved B Coy. in EMPIRE REDOUBT. B Coy. moving back to reserve in BOIS DES ALLEUX.</p> <p>Consolidation work was carried on and posts improved. Snipers plates were set up in post No. 3.</p>		



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

SHEET #5  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1917				
March 28th.			<p>From No. 3 LONGFELLOW Post Snipers were able to enfilade BLURT Trench and several hundred yards of the ARTILLERIE WEG, where they had numerous targets and claimed several hits. In the afternoon D Company moved up from Divisional reserve and relieved A Coy. in the front line, A Company going back to DUMBELL CAMP, BOIS DES ALLEUX.</p> <p>The enemy heavily bombarded the BOMBART and P.S. Lines and LA SALLE Ave. with 77.m.m. and 4.1s. between 8.30 and 9. p.m. but inflicted no casualties.</p>	gsm
March 29th.			<p>Work was continued on the consolidation of the new crater and was commenced on a new Observation Post on LONGFELLOW Crater, between posts 2 and 3. A party of 60 men from the reserve companies were brought in and put to work under Lieut. Ewart, 7th P.C.C.E. on the new Assembly Trench extending from DUFFIELD Trench to Sap. B.</p> <p>Parties were also employed in clearing out LA SALLE Ave. which had been blown in by the enemy's bombardment of the night before.</p> <p>Between 11.15. and 11.45 p.m. enemy put up a heavy barrage of 77.m.m. and 4.1s. on our BOMBART and P. Lines, and LA SALLE Ave., but inflicted no casualties.</p>	gsm
March 30th.			<p>In the early morning our Snipers were very active and made many hits from the new posts in LONGFELLOW Crater. At night work was continued on EWART Trench and in clearing out and repairing the new trenches in the vicinity of LONGFELLOW Crater which had caved in on account of heavy rains.</p>	gsm
March 31st.			<p>EWART Trench was completed and an old sap extending from Sap No. 1 to FINLEY Trench was reclaimed.</p> <p>In addition to the work of consolidating LONGFELLOW Crater and digging Assembly trenches, parties of about 100 men were furnished daily to Brigade for completing Trench Mortar Emplacements, digging communication trenches, etc.</p> <p>The following congratulatory messages were received in connection with the consolidation of LONGFELLOW Crater:</p> <p>FROM: Major General Lipsett, C.M.G., Cndg. 3rd. Canadian Division. TO: 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade.</p> <p>"Judging from the sketch it seems that the 42nd. carried out the work of consolidation with energy and success. Please convey to the O.C., 42nd. Bn. my appreciation of the way he has taken the matter in hand."</p>	gsm

## WAR DIARY

Army Form G. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

SHEET 6  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

42nd Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1917	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
March 31st. Cont.			<p>FROM: Brig. General A. C. Macdonell, C.M.G., Cndg. 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade. TO: 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.</p> <p>"The courage and devotion to duty of all ranks of this fine battalion has never been displayed to better advantage than in coping with the emergency created by the blowing unexpectedly of LONGFELLOW Crater. In spite of casualties the work was pushed through to a successful issue.</p> <p><i>Honourworthy Major Comdg. 42nd Can Bn</i></p>	<p><i>g.m.</i></p>

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

1

C F

42<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION. — 3<sup>rd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM

1<sup>st</sup> April

TO

30<sup>th</sup> April 1917

VOLUME 19

WITH APPENDICES.

WAR DIARY

43rd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 30th April, 1917.

Volume 19.

Diary Text

22 Pages.

Appendix

Operation Order No. 115 dated the 4th April,  
Instructions regarding the attack on LE FOLIE  
Ridge by 7th C.I.B.

Schedule A and shrapnel barrage.

~~Schedule B. Ammunition etc.~~

Schedule C. Disposition of signallers

" D. Carrying party of 50 men for the  
7th Field Company C.E. for construction of  
strong point to be furnished by A. and C. Cos.  
Schedule E. Carrying parties

" F. Disposition of scouts and snipers  
and officers going in.

Operation Order No. 116 dated the 5th April,  
Instructions for relief of part of 23rd Bn. by  
42nd Bn. on WX Night.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

19  
Army Form C. 2118.

Original

Place Date Hour

Summary of Events and Information

2

Remarks and references to Appendices

WAR DIARY

For the month of

APRIL 1917.

42ND CANADIAN BATTALION.

5th ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
APRIL, 1st, 1917.			<p>At 6.45 a.m. a raid was carried out by Lieut. R. Willcock, M.C. and 30 B.R. with the object of obtaining identification and inflicting casualties. They entered the enemy lines at S.22. c.14.2. between DURAND and DUFFIELD Craters and covered a square of trenches opposite LONGFELLOW Crater, formed by BATTER Trench, BUMP Trench, front line trench and a trench not named.</p> <p>The 63rd Divisional Artillery furnished a box shrapnel barrage with which our Stokes Guns, Rifle Grenadiers, Vickers, Colt and Lewis Guns co-operated. The barrage continued until 7.10 a.m. rate of fire being gradually slackened. The Artillery then "stood to" until 7.20 a.m. when the Artillery barrage was put on again for one minute of intense fire, with the object first, of inflicting casualties on enemy who might have come out of dugouts thinking everything over, and second, mystifying the enemy regarding our intentions.</p> <p>The raiding party was divided into 4 small parties.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Party No.1. to form a protective block.</li> <li>" No.2 to deal with enemy front line.</li> <li>" No.3 to proceed round the S.E. and N.sides of the square.</li> <li>" No.4 to follow in rear of No.3 party as far as trench junction S+22. c.3.4 deal with dugout, return to trench junction and form protective block.</li> </ul> <p>Lieut. Willcock to be between No.3 and 4 parties and to follow No.3 round the square.</p> <p>Party No.1. met no enemy and encountered no dugouts. On returning however they destroyed an enemy bomb store by exploding a Stokes bomb in it. Remaining parties all encountered dugouts. In two cases enemy sentries attempted to escape down dugout entrances and were shot; in a number of other cases enemy had been driven into dugout entrances by our shrapnel barrage. They were all killed by the raiding party and dugouts wrecked with Mills and Stokes bombs.</p> <p>Party No.3 under L/Cpl. Kelly had just returned up communication trench at junction S.22. c.2.34. when one of our 4.5 shells exploded close by. Mr Willcock was knocked down, and one other member of the party suffered slight internal haemorrhage. This caused the party to become somewhat demoralised, seeing which, Mr Willcock took the lead.</p> <p>No enemy dugouts were encountered, until turning into BATTER Trench. Under the parapet of BATTER Trench there is a large dugout with numerous entrances; Mr Willcock thought at least 8 entrances of which two had been blown in but not completely closed by our Artillery. On the stairway of each entrance there were several Germans, on whom severe casualties must have been inflicted, as revolvers, rifles and Mills bombs were fired in each. Mr Willcock is un-</p>	3

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Enter heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET. 2. Summary of Events and Information	11 4 Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p>able to say how many entrances were treated with Stokes Bombs, as the Stokes carrier was in rear and found it extremely difficult to keep up owing to the heavy going through the mud. BUMP Trench was found to be in very bad shape, with no revetting or bath mats. The party were prevented from proceeding far along it, owing to our left Stokes gun shooting short. They therefore left the trench and proceeded overland to front line. The four parties then returned through point of entry at 7 a.m. (exactly as planned)</p> <p>One prisoner of the 3rd Coy. 262nd R.I.R. was taken.</p> <p>A novel feature of the raid was the fact that a number of our men were armed with the cut down rifle, not for use in shooting rifle grenades, but with the idea that they could be used more readily in the trench for bayonet work or rifle fire, than rifles of standard length.</p> <p>8 Battalion Snipers were posted in LONGFELLOW No. 1, 2, and 3 and in DUFFIELD post. Sniper Corporal Cave reports that during the first shoot no targets presented themselves, but he saw a Hun in addition to the one who got into our lines making his way towards us. Unfortunately this man went too far to the left and was struck by a Stokes bomb. After the 10 minute interval when our Artillery opened again, a number of men were observed making their way along BATTER turning right up BUGGY towards STAUBWASSER WEG. They could be observed at 4 or 5 different points in that distance. Sniper Hale fired 24 shots from No. 3 LONGFELLOW. Sniper McGregor had 12 shots from the same post. These men are both expert snipers and had a good view of their targets so there is every reason to believe that a large percentage of their shots scored hits. The Trench being blocked in several places it was necessary for these men to climb out and expose themselves. Corporal Cave reports that the shrapnel barrage on BLURT was particularly good. There was smoke emerging at 5 of 6 places presumably from dugouts. During the time the raiding party were over, there was practically no Machine Gun or Rifle fire, but between first and second shoot the enemy opened intermittent rifle fire on our crater posts. The Lewis Gun on post No. 5 our extreme north post on LONGFELLOW scored 3 hits with Lewis Gun during the raid.</p> <p>The personnel of the raiding party was drawn entirely from one company ("C") commanded by Lieut. Willcock, M.C.</p> <p>The greatest credit is due to him for the fact that the raid went almost exactly as planned, in spite of the very heavy mud which made movement slow, and the temporary demoralisation caused by one erratic 4.5 shell. With this exception the Artillery barrage was excellent. The two Stokes guns on the right were very satisfactory, but the left Stokes gun</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

SHEET 3.

Summary of Events and Information

5

Remarks and references to Appendices

shot very short, some shots falling on our side of the crater lip.

Our casualties. I.O.R. (walking case).

ENEMY S.O.S. At 6.45 a.m. as our party went over a white flare was put up from enemy front line, and repeated from his support line, but no Artillery or Trench Mortars responded.

The prisoner proved to be intelligent and very ready to talk, and the information obtained from him provided our Artillery with several new targets.

For this action Lieut. Willcock M.C. was later awarded a Bar to his Military Cross, and No. 193455 L/Cpl. C.A. Nyles a Bar to his Military Medal. The following also received the Military Medal.

No. 419040	Corpl.	E. Greaves.
No. 418606	Pte.	M.L.E. Gordon.
No. 192222	"	J.P. Gates.

The following congratulatory messages were received:-

From. Lieut. Gen. Hon. Sir Julian H.G. Byng K.C.B., K.C.M.G., M.V.O.,  
Commanding Canadian Corps.

To. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

"Please convey to all ranks of Brigade my great appreciation of their repeatedly successful raids"

From. Major General Linnett, C.M.G. 3rd Canadian Division.

To. 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

"Please convey to the 42nd Battalion my hearty congratulations on their successful raid this morning".

On the night of April 1st the Battalion was relieved in the line by the 43rd Canadian Battalion and moved to bivouacs in BOIS des ALLEUX (DUMBEL CAMP). Very wet weather had made this camp a sea of mud, and we were far from comfortable there although some slight improvements were made with straw and bath mats.





## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Cross heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	7	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<b>SHEET 5.</b>		
	<u>ABRIL 7/8th. 1917.</u>		<p>On the night 7/8th "B" and "D" Coys., moved up from VILLERS au BOIS, "B" Coy., going into GRANGE Tunnel while "D" Coy., moved into EMPIRE REDOUBT, which had been vacated by "A" Coy., the same evening.</p> <p>"A" Coy. moved forward to the upper part of the Tunnel running towards LONGFELLOW Grater.</p> <p>"D" Coy., came under shell fire shortly after passing BETHUNE-ARRAS Road, suffering 2 casualties.</p> <p>Saturday to midnight Sunday was spent in getting the platoons into their proper places for moving into the assembly trenches and distribution of material to be carried over with the attacking waves. By Sunday midnight, final preparations were completed, and the men were waiting the the order to move out.</p> <p>Orders were issued for the Battalion to start for the assembly trenches at 4 a.m.</p> <p>"A" and "B" moved out of the tunnel.</p> <p>"C" left dugouts in "P" Line.</p> <p>"D" Coy. came up overland.</p> <p>The assaulting companies assembled as follows:-</p> <p>"A" Coy., on the right in the Observation Line from the Northern Lip of GRANGE Grater to TOPP Sap-TOPP Sap-LONGFELLOW Trench to Sap 1 exclusive.</p> <p>"C" Coy., on the left, LONGFELLOW Trench from Sap.1. to LONGFELLOW Post 5, both inclusive.</p> <p>"B" Coy., on the right, EWART Trench from DUFFIELD Trench to OBSERVATION Line exclusive.</p> <p>"D" Coy., Reclaimed Trench from DUFFIELD Trench to FINLEY Trench and OBSERVATION Line, both inclusive.</p> <p>Carrying party for S.P.7 ..... P.78.</p>		<i>lll</i>
	<u>APRIL 9th. 1917.</u>		<p style="text-align: center;"><b>OBJECTIVES.</b></p> <p>"A" and "C" Coys., to capture and consolidate Intermediate Objective - S.22.d.35.55 - S.22.b.00.15.</p> <p>STRONG POINT 7 to be established in BLUE Trench at S.22.b.4.0.</p>		<i>lll</i>
			continued.		
			235 Wt W2352/454 - 700,000 5/15 D.D.&L. ADSS/Form C. 2118		

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Error heading not required.)

SHEET 6.

Summary of Events and Information

8

References and references to Appendices

"B" and "D" the Ultimate Objective S.22.d.90.95 - S.22.b.70.35

"On our right were the P.P.C.L.I. and on the left the 102nd Canadian Battalion supported by the 54th Battalion of the 4th Division.

Strength of the Battalion was 722 All Ranks.

Officers taking part in the engagement.

HEADQUARTERS.

Major. S. C. Norworthy. M. C.  
" R. L. H. Ewing. M. C.  
Lieut. J. D. MacLeod.  
" L. C. Montgomery.  
" A. J. McIntyre.  
" E. W. Auld.  
" C. S. Martin. M. C.

O. C.  
2 i/c.  
Adjutant.  
Asst. Adjutant.  
Scout Officer.  
Signal Officer.  
O. C. Batta. Dumps.

"A" COMPANY.

Capt. E. B. Finley.  
Lieut. R. J. Wattan.  
" J. T. Downey.

"B" COMPANY.

Lieut. R. P. Studd.  
" D. F. Small.  
" H. B. Trout.

"C" COMPANY.

Lieut. J. T. L. Shum.  
" C. B. Tinling.  
" G. Sheffield.

"D" COMPANY.

Major. E. R. Pease.  
Lieut. S. Macdonald.  
Lieut. G. S. Ashby.

continued.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are combined in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET 7.	Summary of Events and Information	9	Signatures and references to Appendices	
<u>APRIL 9th contd.</u>				<p>WORKING PARTY FOR S.P.7.....</p> <p>ENGINEER OFFICER FOR S.P.7.....</p> <p>OFFICER i/c STOKES GUNS.....</p> <p>OFFICER i/c BDE. MACH. GUNS.....</p> <p>BATTALION M.O.....</p> <p>CHAPLAIN.....</p>			<p>Lieut. M. T. Cohen.</p> <p>Lieut. Ewart (7th F. C. C. E)</p> <p>Lieut. H. E. Hilton.</p> <p>Lieut. E. R. Morris.</p> <p>Capt. W. Hale.</p> <p>Capt. G. Kilpatrick.</p>
		a.m.					
		3.55		Major Ewing left Battalion Headquarters to make certain everything was ready, and the Companies in their proper places.			
		5.11		Message received from him that the Coys., were all in position at 4.45 a.m. This message was immediately forwarded to Brigade. Zero hour for the barrage was 5.30 a.m. Artillery opened exactly on time, both Machine Guns of our Division and those of the Left opened up one minute before zero.			
		5.35		Word was received that the Battalion had crossed the craters, and at 5.40 a.m. Lieut. McIntyre phoned in from the O.P. on LONGFELLOW Crater that everything was going well with the 42nd Battalion. From 5.41 a.m. to 5.59 a.m. reports kept coming in from the O.P. that our Battalion was making continuous progress.			
		6.02		O.P. reported men in first objective. By this time visibility was very low, the men had to advance in drizzling rain changing to sleet.			
		6.09		O.P. reported conditions still progressing favourably, that our linesmen with telephone communication were right in rear of attacking Companies.			
		6.22		O.P. reported prisoners coming in freely; that our contact Aeroplanes had been brought down.			
		6.50		It was reported that Lieut. Shum commanding "C" Coy. had been wounded. He stated that the Huns were demoralised, and offering feeble resistance. Up to this time it had been reported that things were going well with the Division on our left.			
		6.51		Advice was sent to Lieut. Willcock to report. The Hun barrage which consisted of 4.2's and 5.9 H.E. was principally landing in area bounded by P. Line and the O. Line. At 6.51 a.m. the first Hun artillery was observed to shoot between crater lines and BEGGAR Trench. Their shoot continued in the neighbourhood of the O. Line.			
				continued.			
				2133 Wt. W. 2544/2424 700/000 3/13 D.D.&L. ADSS, Form C. 2118.			

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Enter heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	10	Remarks and references to Appendices
			SHEET 8		
APRIL 9th	1917	contd.			
		A.M.			
		7.15	Lineamen who had established a station in BEGGAR Trench sent in the following message from Lieut. Wattam. "A" Coy., has reached first Objective and has 30 men."		
		8.00	Capt. Hale, Bn. M.O. accompanied by the Chaplain., Captain G. Kilpatrick established advanced Regimental Aid Post in BLUE Trench.		
		8.15	Company Runners reported back stating final objective reached. There was also a message from Lieut. McIntyre stating that he had been to the bottom of LA FOLIE RIDGE and could observe no signs of the enemy. He also reported that the Left Battalion was being held up. This was the first intimation that we had had that things were not going well with the Division on our left.		
		9.33	Major Ewing returned and reported that Companies had reached their final objective and were digging in. 4th Division had not come up on our left; that there was a small detachment of the 54th Battalion with Major Pease. Officer i/c of left flank were pushing out patrols to see if they could be located. He reported that sniping and rifle fire from the left and HILL 145 was very severe, causing numerous casualties. Lieuts. Wattam and Hilton and Medical Sergeant Weston had been sniped and killed between the time which he had left them in going forward to the final objective and returning to the Intermediate Objective. Situation was reported to Brigade. Major Ewing reported having seen a light field gun in our area. Events in front line about this time were later described by Major Pease as follows:- "The final objective was reached and consolidation started at about 8 a.m. on April 9th. A short time after this Capt. Hugh Wallis of the Brigade Staff arrived and proceeded to the left where we were in touch with a few of the 54th Battalion, who had reached their objective. He soon returned and reported that the Battalion on our left was held up by enemy Machine Gun and requested me to call a few Rifle Grenadiers and see what we could do. This I did and was moving to the left flank, which I had reached, when the sniping became very active from the left and we could see numbers of the enemy on the skyline about 200 yards distant. The rifle grenadiers took cover and opened up fire at the enemy and I moved down to		
			continued.		
			2331 Wt. 7034/1434 703000 5/25 D.D.&L. ADSS/Form C. 2118		

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erases heading not required.)

SHEET 9.

Summary of Events and Information

11

Remarks and references to Appendices

APRIL 9th contd.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
		A.M.		
		9.33	the left, warning everyone I could find towards the flank. To our left a Machine Gun and a number of men presumably 54th also engaged this party, and after a brisk exchange of fire the enemy withdrew leaving only a few snipers who took positions in the wood on the brow, and just below the slope.	
		9.35	We had a Colt gun and 54th Gun and about 20 men in action on our left flank".	
		9.37	Wire sent to rear to have Lieut. Stewart report. Report from Major Pease asking for Lewis Gunners and ammunition. That the Hun was attempting to turn our flank 100 yards left of the re-entrant. Major Norworthy left for tour of the newly occupied area.	
		10.10	Estimated casualty report sent to Brigade. Approximately 200 All Rangs. Lieut. Ewart 7th Field Coy. C.E. came in and reported STRONG POINT 7 as nearly completed.	
		10.15	Capt. Topp, Liaison Officer with 54th and 102nd. His second report stated that the 87th Battalion on the left of the 54th Battalion has been hung up, but that the 102nd Battalion were consolidating their position in BEIGAR Trench.	
		10.45	Report came in from 102nd Battalion stating that the flank of their Battalion is at junction of BEIGAR and BLUNT Trench.	
		10.54	Following is reported message sent by L.O. 54th Battalion staying at our Headquarters. "Senior Major 42nd, who has just returned from the front assures me that their final left flank is in advance of BLUNT and BLUE. The 42nd are protecting their flank and suggest that the 54th push forward to BLUNT and BLUE. The 42nd are willing to co-operate in this effort".	
		11.25	Lieut. Willcock reported from rear, and was sent forward taking message concerning suspected counter attack as received from 7th Canadian Inf. Bde.	
		11.30	The following message from Major Ewing sent to Capt. Topp, L.O. with 54th Battalion "I have just come down the left flank and the intermediate and final objectives are still in the air, and we are being sniped severely from the left. Have made a defensive flank"	
			Following message from Brigade sent forward to Major Norworthy, or Major Pease:- "Message received at 11.30 a.m. Enemy are advancing up BOIS du CHAMP POURRI, BOBBY, BOIKIN and FILLIP Trenches. Have sent up one platoon, 2 Lewis Gun Sections 49th Battalion to report."	

WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Write heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET 10.	Summary of Events and Information	12	Remarks and references to Appendices
APRIL 21.	1917.	contd.				
		A.M.		Following message from Major Ewing, sent forward to Major Nornworthy or Major Pease. "4th Division report they are at BEGGAR and BLUNT. Have asked them to push forward and we will assist"		
		12.00				
		Noon.		Following from Col. Harvey. O.C. 54th Battalion, repeated to Brigade, and Major Nornworthy:- "I instructed O.C. "A" Coy. at 9.45 a.m. to consolidate BEGGAR Line as a temporary line and to do his best to push up to BLUNT and BLUE, if necessary asking assistance of the 42nd. At present we appear to be holding BEGGAR as far as BITTER"		
		P.M.				
		12.05		After 3 different calls for Stretchers none have yet arrived.		
		12.25		Following message received from Adjutant 42nd Battalion. "10.15 I got carrying party of 22 men; sent them forward with SAA and Grenades with instructions to report to Major Pease. Party carried 5500 rounds. At 11.08 a.m. the reinforcing platoon from 49th Battalion reported - strength 1 Officer 33 O.R. They carried the following ammunition. 5,000 rounds SAA (MG). 3,300 SAA. Bandolier. 600 No. 23 Mills Rifle Grenades. 240 No. 5 Mills Grenades.		
				These were sent forward to Major Pease with guides. 11.15 a.m. 4 Lewis Gunners from 49th Battalion with 2 Lewis Guns reported and were sent forward to "D" Coy."		
		12.35	p.m.	Major Collum from Headquarters 3rd Cdn. Division arrived. After consultation with Major Ewing, rang up Division and explained the situation on the left.		
		12.45		Following is list of casualties of Officers reported at present time. KILLED..... Lieut. Richard John Wattas. " H. E. Hilton. WOUNDED..... Capt. E. B. Finley. Lieut. J. T. L. Shum.		
						<i>[Handwritten signature]</i>
				2331 WL W2544/458 700000 5/5 D.D.S.L. ADSS/FORM C. 2118 * Tinning, C. B.		

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Cross heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET 11.	Summary of Events and Information	13	Subjects and references to Appendices
	<u>APRIL 9th, 1917, contd.</u>					
		P.M.		WOUNDED CONTD.....	Lieut. G. Sheffield. " S. Macdonald. " H. B. Trout.	
		12.52		Major Ewing telephoned Staff Capt'n "Q" asking for blank ammunition, and was informed that there was none on hand, and it would be wired for.		
		1.45		Following message received from Major Norsworthy:- "No 4th Division Troops in BEGGAR for 200 yards North of BLUNT St. We are extending and occupying it. Saw no troops in front but understand one platoon of 54th is in touch with our left from outpost line over brow of the HILL. Machine Gun fire from HILL 145 has ceased" Forwarded to Brigade by Major Ewing. "I consider it urgent that 4th Division advance and occupy HILL 145"		
		2.08		Following received from Major Norsworthy:- "I am holding two Lewis Guns and Stokes and carrying party at S.P.7 until dusk. Do not think it safe for them to go to "D" Coy., at present" Forwarded to Bdeverbally by Major Ewing.		
		2.25		Major Ewing is sending to rear Battalion Headquarters for Lieuts. Banwell and Hale with remainder of available men. At 1 p.m. Lieut Donnelly and 50 men were ordered to report here. All parties to bring 48 hours rations.		
		2.30		Lieut. Stewart reported here, and received orders from Major Ewing to proceed to "A" Coy. He took messages for Major Norsworthy Major Ewing attended conference at P.P.C.L.I. Headquarters. Brig. General being present. He was informed that a new Brigade 4th Division would attack at 4.30 p.m. in order to attempt to join up our left flank, a company of the 52nd Battalion has been detailed to O.C. 42nd Battalion. There was only time to communicate the above by 'phone to O.C. with Coys - a written message was later sent by Lieut. Stewart confirming the wire.		





## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Brass heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendixes
			<del>SECRET</del> 13.	15
	APRIL 24th 1917	Contd.		
		P.M.		
		9.00	Captn. Hugh Wallis returning from the front dropped in for a few minutes. Stated everything was in such the same condition as Major Norsworthy reported.	
		10.28	The following received by Lieut. McKennie, Liaison Officer, 54th Battalion:- "One company of 47th Battalion have left here to reinforce our line. The 85th have reached BUTTER and we understand they have taken HILL 145. This is not confirmed".	
	APRIL 10th 1917.			
		2.35		
		A.M.		
		2.45	Major Norsworthy has sent through word that things have more or less settled down.	
		4.00	Message received in from Corps states that very strong German reinforcements are moving towards VIMY from MERICOURT. Message received from Major Norsworthy at advanced report centre, on general situation, message as follows:- "B and D Coys., are dug in in the wood. They are in close touch with P.P.C.L.I. on right. Their left flank is in the air and extends a little further north than what was laid down as our Brigade boundary - Total garrison about 150 including 5 Officers, 4 Lewis Guns (42nd Bn) and 2 Colt Guns, 2 Lewis Guns (49th Bn). A supply of L.G. discs, 14" VERY pistols and SOS flares was sent them to-night. Their left flank receive a considerable measure of protection from the fact that "C" Coy, together with a few men of the 54th Bn., have in addition to garrisoning Strong Point, pushed well up BLUE Trench and dug a flanking trench on both its East and West side - estimated distance separating companies 100 yards. Garrison of BLUE Trench and S.P. 7 - 2 Officers and 98 O.R. (including 2 or 3 Lewis Guns) and Lieut. Morris and 3 Vickers Guns. Garrison of BEGGAR Trench 2 Officers and 70 men including 2 Lewis Guns. Touch with Left Battalion in BEGGAR Trench was not established until late this afternoon, when it was found	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Cross heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET 14.	Summary of Events and Information	16	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<u>APRIL 10th, 1917.</u>		<u>Contd.</u>			
	A.M.	4.00		that they were manning BEGGAR Trench from S.22.A.8.3 to junction of BEGGAR and BLIGHTY S.22.a.6.4 with 3 Officers and about 130 men of 102nd Bn. and 54th Bn. including 7 or 8 Lewis Guns, their left flank being in the air. In accordance with Brigade advice of pending operation the whole of this garrison was moved south on BEGGAR and temporarily there are 200 men between about S.22.a.9.3 and junction of BEGGAR and BLUE. Major Pease stated enemy is in considerable force about forty yards distant from outpost line. He snipes actively by day from behind logs of wood. Only one enemy shell has hit our newly dug front line trench. There has been considerable shelling mostly falling 20 to 30 yards in front or rear. On BEGGAR and BLUE there has been intermittent shelling by H.E. (probably 5.9) Two hits on BLUE near S.P.7 this morning caused considerable casualties. On the whole enemy registration on these trenches is not so good as would be expected. Our men are very tired and would strongly recommend that they be relieved tomorrow night. P.S. 2 additional Lewis Guns and crews from 49th Battalion have been added to garrison of BLUE.		
		7.45		Major Noreworthy phoned through from Advanced report centre that situation was quiet. He wanted Stokes ammunition carried up. This is being attended to.		
		8.25		A message from Major Noreworthy states that there were still 25 stretcher cases waiting to be evacuated, but could not be moved owing to scarcity of stretchers. I rang up Brigade Major and he promised to give the matter his attention.		
		9.25		Brigade conference at P.P.C.L.I. Headquarters.		
		10.15		Capt. Topp has returned to Headquarters as situation on 4th Division is considered as stationary.		
		10.43		Major Ewing returned from conference, where it was decided to send out patrols from each Battalion at 12.30 p.m. SOS barrage to be moved forward of BRACKEN trench, 350 yards.		
		11.35		Capt. Topp has defined the 4th Division outpost line as follows:- "Proceeding from south to north-BEGGAR to BLEARY to junction of BLACK and BASSO, the line then carries along BASSO to Junction of BAUBLE, along to junction of BATTER. There are posts pushed forward up BEGGAR and BEBUG to dominate top of HILL 145".		
				continued.		

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Brass heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET 15.	Summary of Events and Information	17	Remarks and references to Appendices
	APRIL 19th. 1917.	contd.				
		11.52 A.M.		Relief of Artillery Officers has taken place.		
		11.55		Following from 54th Battalion:- " We have consolidated the BEGGAR Line from BLUNT to BESSY, thence BIFF to BILLY to BASSO and we are in touch with the 85th Battalion. Parties of our men are holding HILL 145 and we are commencing consolidation of the BEER-BLUE Line at once and will be connecting up with the 42nd Battalion Strong Point at S.22.b.4.3".		
		P.M.				
		1.06		54th Bn. Liaison Officer has left to report back to his Battalion.		
		1.13		Capt. Toop has returned with information the HILL 145 has been definitely taken-line consolidated along BEGGAR from BLUNT to BASIN.		
		1.15		Lieut. McIntyre and 12 men left front trench and worked slowly down southern slope of re-entrant in S.22.b. At 2 p.m. an 18 pndr. H.E. shell which appeared to come from rear of 4th Division landed in middle of party and killed Pte. Savoy. No enemy were encountered on south side of re-entrant and fired on, Lieut. McIntyre nor any sign of trench or strong point. At this juncture patrol was observed from northern side of re-entrant and fired on, Lieut. McIntyre being hit in the head and arm. They were forced to withdraw and make their way back by ones or twos to our line which was reached about 2.45 p.m.		
				Snipers being engaged from our trench by rifle grenades.		
				NOTE:- At 3.30 p.m. when 47th Bn. occupied ridge these snipers referred to, were observed to give themselves up.		
		2 25		Message in from "D" Coy., our 18 pndrs shooting short. The Artillery have been notified.		
		2.45		Adjutant P.P.C.L.I. has just been in and reports patrols from his Battalion and R.C.R. set strong opposition when about 150 yards from own line.		
				The following message from Lieut. McKenzie. 54th Battalion:- "Situation on our frontage very satisfactory at present. Our Battalion has consolidated BEGGAR Line as advised previously. We also have established strong points at our final objectives at S.22.a.8.8. our S.22.b.2.7 and S.22.b.4.3, and are consolidating a line through these points to join up with 42nd Bn."		
				continued.		

WAR DIARY

or

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Brass heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET 16	Summary of Events and Information	18	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<u>APRIL 10th 1917.</u>					
				of our Division/ Two other Battalions have already gone through this final line but no reports have been received of their success."		
		3.10		(Lieut. Willcock, M.C. reported to Major Norsworthy at 5.30 p.m. at Advanced Battalion Headquarters that he had been out along BLUE to try to locate and connect up with 102nd who were between us and 54th, but could not find them). Message from 7th C.I. Bde stating that 49th Bn. would go through our line and push forward patrols to BOIS du CHAMP POURRI and CHAUDIERRE. Not more than two platoons to be used in this operation. R.C.R. to clear FILLIP as far East as S, 23.d.9.8.		
		4.20		42nd Battalion will establish post at BRACKEN Trench" The above was forwarded to Major Norsworthy.		
		9.20		Reported from front line our own Artillery shooting short and causing casualties. Word has come in that Lieut. McIntyre was wounded.		
		9.25		Major Norsworthy reported back to Battalion Headquarters and reported situation normal. The 4th Division have established connection with "D" Coy., and are to dig themselves in to-night. The following from 7th C.I. Bde. in reply to our protest that Divisional Burying Battalion apparently doing nothing:- "Dead will be buried to-morrow. Graves being dug to-day" Lieut. McIntyre and Ashby were wounded this afternoon. The former being sniped while on patrol and the latter due to some 18 pads. shooting short. Major Ewing left for forward area. Capt Topp went up to relieve Major Pease.		
	<u>APRIL 11th 1917.</u>					
		A.M.				
		5.45		During the past night Major Pease, and what was left of B. Coy were relieved in the front line and sent back to VILLERS au BOIS.		
		6.10		At dawn to-day a destructive bombardment of the following trenches and works will commence. BLOATER from Junction with BLIGHTY to PETIT VIMY and defences, FLICKER and FLIT		

## WAR DIARY

or

## INTELLIGENCE-SUMMARY.

(Brass heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET 17.	Summary of Events and Information	References and references to Appendices
	APRIL 11th 1917.				19
				trenches and wire.	
		A.M.			
		7.25		Major Eving has sent a message down asking for ten extra tins of water. These are being sent up.	
		8.12		Captn. Kilpatrick left for the Transport Lines.	
		8.30		The following received from Captn. Topp O. C. front Line:- "Many Huns seen moving outward along track running to S. 17. S. 18 and S. 12 north of LENS-ARRAS Road. Our Observers report at least half a Battalion moved out between 6.30 a.m. and 8.00 a.m. in parties of about 50. Snipers and Lewis Gunners opened but range too great for effective shooting. Situation quiet".	
		8.55		Following from Brigade:- "Heavy Artillery shooting on dugouts N.E. edge of LA FOLIE WOOD BRACKEN Trench, BUCK Trench, FILLIP Trench, ARTILLERIE and STAUB-WASSER WEG as nearly as they safely can to Infantry present positions. This shooting will commence practically at once"	
		9.04		Following from Brigade:- "This morning at an hour to be notified later a platoon of the 58th Battalion will advance under Artillery and Stokes Gun Barrage to clear the Germans out of S.23 central".	
		10.55		Major Norworthy is sending a message to Major Eving informing him of 58th Battalion, 1 platoon patrol, also arranging with him to send out a patrol to establish a post in BRACKEN, if the 58th Battalion patrol is successful.	
		10.40		Captn. Topp reports our Artillery 18 pads and heavies shooting too short.	
		10.50		Corps reported no #5 Mills coming up from Base.	
		11.02		The 58th patrol will go out at 12 noon.	
		11.35		Lieut. Auld reports our six inch dropping short between BEGGAR and front line.	
		11.54		Major Eving acknowledged receipt of message regarding patrols, and sends the following message regarding Stokes guns, etc. "I understood yesterday that 7th B.T.M.s had a Stokes in reserve. Think it could be used to advantage up here. Splendid work could be done with 2" T.M. Is any effort being made to get these forward".	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

OF  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Excess heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	20	Remarks and references to Appendices
			SHEET 18.		
	<u>APRIL 11th 1917.</u>		<u>contd.</u>		
		P.M.			
		12.40	Received a message from 49th Battalion asking us to leave Lewis Guns behind for them.		
		3.55	Lieuts Studd and Downey have left for VILLERS au BOIS after being relieved by Lieuts. McNaughton and Hoyles.		
		4.00	Lieut. MacLeod has taken out runners to meet 49th Battalion.		
		7.15	49th Battalion Officer has arrived and taken over Trench stores in Battalion Headquarters.		
		7.45	Major Ewing reported relief complete, and we immediately make preparations to move off from Battalion Headquarters to VILLERS au BOIS.		
			<u>OFFICER CASUALTIES.</u>		
			KILLED.		
				Lieut. Richard John Wates.	
				Lieut. Douglas Parkharson Small.	
				Lieut. Harry E. Hilton.	
			DIED OF WOUNDS.	Lieut. Charles Barnaby Tinsley	
				Lieut. Geoffrey Sheffield.	
			WOUNDED.		
				Capt. (Act/Maj) Eric Barrett Finley.	
				Lieut. J. T. L. Shum.	
				Lieut. Stanley Macdonald.	
				Lieut. Harry Bernard Trout.	
				Lieut. Gerald Scarlett Ashby.	
				Lieut. Alexander James McIntyre.	
			OTHER RANKS.		
			(including those unaccounted for.....) 291.		
			On the 9th inst. Lieut. C. F. Gifford returned to duty with "C" Coy from Canadian Base Depot.		

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regn., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Exact heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	SHEET. 19.	Summary of Events and Information	21	References and references to Appendices	
	<u>APRIL 13th 1917.</u>			The undermentioned Officers reported from 3rd Canadian Entrenching Battalion and were taken on strength and posted to Companies as stated:-			
			Major.	Edward Colpitts Weyman	"D"	<i>ll</i>	
			Lieut.	Ernest Archibald McFall	"C"		
			"	Joseph Darley Lemoine.	"A"		
	<u>APRIL 14th 1917.</u>			A re-adjustment of Officers consequent upon casualties, and the return of Major McLennan, D.S.O. was made as follows:-			
			Major.	S. C. Norworthy. M.C.	2 i/c.	<i>ll</i>	
			"	R. L. H. Ewing. M.C.	Adjt.		
			Capt.	J. A. Mathewson.	Asst/Adjt.		
			<u>A. COMPANY.</u>		<u>B. COMPANY.</u>		
			Major. S. J. Mathewson. M.C.	O.C.	Capt. C. B. Topp.	O.C.	
			Lieut. McNaughton. J. M.C.	2 i/c.	Lieut. R. F. Studd.	2 i/c.	
			" J. T. Downey.		Lieut. Benwell. E.		
			" Cohen. M. T.		" Biggar. L. E.		
			" Lemoine. J. D.		" Donnelly. E. J.		
			<u>C. COMPANY.</u>		<u>D. COMPANY.</u>		
			Lieut. R. Willcock. M.C.	O.C.	Major Pease. E. R.	O.C.	
			" J. D. MacLeod.	2 i/c.	Lieut. Stewart. J. C.	2 i/c.	
			" C. Watt.		" Savage. G. H.		
			" C. P. Gifford.		Major E. C. Weyman.		
			" McFall. E. A.		Lieut. H. L. Hoyles.		
			Lieut. H. Hamer. M.M. and Lieut. H. E. C. ook. M.M. reported from Officers Cadet School, and were posted to C and B. Coys respectively.				
	<u>APRIL 16th 1917.</u>		Lieut. H. S. Fry was granted a Commission, taken on strength and posted to Headquarters.				<i>ll</i>



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Excess heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			SHEET 20.	22
	<u>APRIL 17th 1917.</u>		Lieut. F. B. Macfie reported back from duty with Brigade Wirers, and was posted to "D" Company.	<i>H.C.</i>
	<u>APRIL 19th 1917.</u>		Consequent on the breaking up of the 73rd Canadian Battalion, Lieut. R. W. Gee and 240 O.R. were sent as a reinforcement to the 42nd Battalion. The G.O.C. 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade, and Major McLennan D.S.O. both, addressed them, stating that they were coming to another Battalion of the same Home Regiment, and that they should regard themselves not as a draft but as a part of the 42nd Battalion, in which they were very welcome.	
			Lieut. D. B. Gilmour, Sick in Hospital, was also transferred to us from 73rd Canadian Battalion and Major MacWilliam, W.L. supernumerary, attached to 73rd Canadian Battalion because attached to us.	<i>H.C.</i>
			During the period April 12th to 20th inclusive, the weather for the most part was dull and wet. The early part of the period was devoted to lectures, baths, replacing deficiencies and re-organization; later regular parades were held and training carried on, particularly in outpost work and open order drill. A few working parties were furnished under Brigade Orders.	
			The Divisional Commander visited the Battalion during the period, addressed the men and congratulated them on the part they had played in the taking of VIMY RIDGE. He made special reference to the fact that our left flank was in the air for about 30 hours.	
			During this period Lieut. Col. A. A. Magee proceeded to Headquarters, 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade to whom he was attached for instruction.	<i>H.C.</i>
			On April 20th orders were received to move into Corps Reserve. The Battalion moved off at 12.30 a.m. on April 21st, and took up quarters in GOODMAN Tunnel with Headquarters in BEGG Street Trench (Old Battalion Headquarters right sub-section, LA POLIE SECTOR)	
	<u>APRIL 21/22/23</u>		Working parties were furnished for completion of LA POLIE (Corduroy) Road and Tram Line running from NEUVILLE ST VAAST to top of VIMY RIDGE.	
			On April 23rd notification was received of the following promotions:-	
			continued.	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(When heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			23	
			SHEET 21.	
			Lieut. DeLotbiniere A. J.	To be Act/Captn. vice Captn. W. A. Grafftey (wounded) 16-9-16
			Lieut. J. C. Stewart.	To be Act/Captn. vice Captn. E. C. Evans (wounded) 9-11-16.
			Lieut. P. N. McDougall.	To be Act/Captn. vice Captn. J. A. Mathewson (wounded) 9-10-16
			Lieut. E. B. Finley.	To be Captn. vice Captn. S. C. Norworthy. M. C. (Promoted) 9-7-16
			Lieut. McNaughton. J. M. C.	To be Captn. vice Captn. S. J. Mathewson. M. C. (To Canada) 25-1-17.
			Capt. R. L. H. Ewing. M. C.	To be Major vice Major S. C. Norworthy. M. C. (Promoted) 2-1-17.
			Capt. E. B. Finley.	To be Act/Major vice Temp. Major. C. B. Wilson (killed) 16-9-16.
			Capt. C. B. Topp.	To be Act/Major whilst commanding a Coy. vice Captn. S. J. Mathewson. M. C. who relinquishes the acting rank of Major.
			<p>On the night of April 23rd the Battalion moved into close support in VIMY Village relieving one company and Headquarters of the 2nd C.M.R. and 2 Coys. 1st C.M.R. and 1 Officer and 40 men in dugouts east of GOODMAN Tunnel. The latter were brought up the following day and accommodated in dugouts on the eastern slope of VIMY RIDGE.</p> <p>The Battalion remained in close support at VIMY Village. Weather was very fine throughout. During the first few nights work was carried on under Battalion arrangements, on the construction of a 3rd line trench. During the latter half of the tour we furnished working parties to a 7th P.C. Officer for work on second line trench. In the matter of casualties the tour was very unfortunate.</p> <p>Major Weyman. Lieut. Montgomery and Lieut Macfie and 22 O.R. were wounded, and 11 O.R. including C. S. M. Fitzgerald were killed. All these casualties were from shell fire. Major. S. J. Mathewson. M. C. was slightly wounded by a machine gun bullet.</p> <p>On the 26th April Lieuts. Haldin and Trout re-joined the Battalion, the latter taking over the duties of Battalion Scout Officer.</p>	
	APRIL 23/29th. 1917			

## WAR DIARY

or

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Ence heading not required.)

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. These pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	24	Remarks and references to Appendices
			SHEET 22.		
	APRIL 29th 1917.		<p>On the 29th April Lieut. E. Bonwell proceeded on duty with the 7th Canadian T.M. Battery for one month on trial.</p>		
			<p>On the night of relief April 29th, VIMY Village was heavily bombarded from 11 p.m. until 5 a.m. with gas shells. Fortunately most of the relief had been completed previously, but part of Headquarters and part of "D" Coy., were affected by the gas, although no casualties were suffered from it. We were relieved in VIMY by the 116th Canadian Battalion and the 42nd Battalion moved to GRANGE Tunnel.</p>		
	APRIL 30th 1917.		<p>On the afternoon of the 30th the Battalion marched to SUBURBAN HUTS, VILLERS BA BOIS.</p>		
			<p><i>Battle of Vimy</i>  <i>Commander 42nd Batta.</i>  <i>Canadian Expeditionary Force.</i></p>		

Copy No.

By  
Major S. C. Newsworthy, M. C.  
Commanding 42nd Battalion  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref. Map VIMY 1/30,000  
Edition S. a.

WEDNESDAY, APRIL 4TH, 1917.

## 1. INFORMATION

On "Z" day (the date of which has been communicated verbally to all concerned) the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will capture the crest of LA FOLIE RIDGE from the junction of the tracks at S. 29. a. 6. 9½ to point in BLUE Trench at S. 22. b. 5. 2., and from the final objective will push forward and dig, and consolidate, a line in LA FOLIE WOOD S. 23. c. 9½. 0 to S. 22. b. 7. 4.

## 2. INTENTION

The 42nd. Battalion will attack at ZERO Hour on a frontage of our Observation Line from Northern Lip of GRANGE CRATER to LONGFELLOW CRATER POST NO. 5. On our right will be the P. P. C. L. I. and on our Left the 102nd. Canadian Battalion supported by the 54th Canadian Battalion who will pass through the 102nd. Battalion at the Intermediate Objective.

## 3. ZERO HOUR.

Zero Hour will be at \_\_\_\_\_

## 4. ARTILLERY.

As per Schedule "A" attached

## 5. OBJECTIVES.

INTERMEDIATE OBJECTIVE - Trench Junction at S. 22. d. 35. 55.  
to Trench Junction at S. 22. b. 00. 15.  
ULTIMATE OBJECTIVE - Road Junction at S. 22. d. 90. 95.  
to Road Junction at S. 22. b. 70. 35.

## 6. STRONG POINTS.

S. 22. b. 9. 0. to enfilade track.  
S. 22. b. 7. 3. to cover North side of re-entrant.  
S. 22. b. 4. 0. in BLUE Trench (S. P. 7.)

7. JUMPING  
OFF TRENCHES

A COMPANY OBSERVATION LINE from Northern Lip of GRANGE CRATER to TOPP SAP - TOPP SAP - LONGFELLOW TRENCH to SAP 1 exclusive.  
C COMPANY LONGFELLOW TRENCH from SAP 1 to LONGFELLOW POST 5 both inclusive.  
B COMPANY EWART TRENCH from DUFFIELD TRENCH inclusive to OBSERVATION LINE exclusive.  
D COMPANY Reclaimed Trench from FINLEY TRENCH to (including 2 OBSERVATION LINE both inclusive. Colt Gun Crews)

Special Carrying party for S. P. 7 50 men under  
Lieut. Cohen.....P. 78 See schedule D.

## 8. FORMATIONS.

The Battalion will attack on a two company front, each Company on a one platoon front.

- A and C Companies will capture and consolidate the Intermediate Objective.  
A Company on the Right C Company on the Left.

Mopping up Parties. 2 parties consisting of one Officer and 50 men each of the 49th Battalion, are detailed respectively to A and C Companies to act as sentries over dug-outs and moppers.

FORMATIONS  
Continued.

A and C Companies will cross craters in files as rapidly as possible.

From the enemy front line each platoon of A and C Company will advance in two lines with 20 paces distance between lines - 30 paces between platoons. Moppers up 10 paces behind second line.

Carrying party - S.P.7 See Schedule "D"

Carrying parties- Ammunition & Material - See Schedule E.

11. B and D Companies, will capture and consolidate the ultimate objective.

B on the Right D on the Left.

They will cross "NO MAN'S LAND" 20 paces in rear of preceding platoons.

From the enemy's line B and D will advance at 40 paces distance from A and C Coys., with platoons in two lines of sections in single file (Artillery formation) with 20 paces between lines and 30 paces between platoons.

(d) Company Commanders B and D, will detail Scouts and Covering parties to cover construction of Strong Points.

(b) They will also detail 30 men each to construct 2 Strong Points at:-

S.22.b.9.0. (Cross tracks)

S.22.b.7.3. (Pork tracks)

Any spare men should be employed in digging in between Strong Points.

(c) A minimum garrison of 20 men each will be detailed to hold strong points.

9. PROTECTION  
OF FLANKS.

Each Company will detail an N.C.O. on either flank of its leading platoon who will see that touch is maintained with next company or Battalion. The N.C.Os. on the extreme right and left of the Battalion will each have a party of four men. An additional bombing section will be detailed by C and D Coys., to their leading platoons to protect the left flanks if neighbouring unit should be held up.

10. SCOUTS  
& SNIPERS.

As per Schedule "F"

11. MOPPERS UP.

MOPPERS UP detailed to Mop Up STAUBWASSER WEG will rendezvous when their work is complete, at junction of BEGGAR STREET and STAUBWASSER WEG reporting to O.C. A Company.

Moppers Up detailed to German Front Lines will, on completion of their work, proceed to Battalion Dump, where they will obtain stretchers, and both parties of Moppers Up will then be employed in carrying out casualties. When this is completed they will report to O.C., 49th Battalion at Machine Gun Fort.

12. BRIGADE  
MACHINE GUNS.

4 Guns and crews under Brigade Machine Gun Officer will move at ZERO - 60 via P. LINE into MINE Chamber off TOPP SAP, and will go forward without further orders at ZERO plus 30.

They will take up position in BEGGAR TRENCH until Ultimate Objective is reached when they will move forward reporting - 2 to O.C. B and 2 to O.C. D Company

These guns will eventually garrison S.P.7.

13. STOKES  
GUNS.

Two Stokes Guns and crews, and carrying party 10 men per gun are detailed one each to B and D Coys., and will go forward under Stokes Gun Officer in rear of the last wave. They may however be called upon to assist A and C Coys. to maintain their flanks in the event of the right or left Battalion being held up.

14. ENGINEERS AND WIRERS. 1. Officer and 4 Sappers of the 7th Field Coy. and 5 Brigade Wipers will supervise construction of Strong Point 7 and will go forward with carrying party of 50 men above mentioned.
15. SIGNALS. As per Schedule "C"
16. BATTALION D.P. LONGFELLOW CRATER between posts 1 and 2.
17. CONTACT AEROPLANES. Leading Line will communicate their position to contact Aeroplanes by lighting flares when called upon. Aeroplane will call by three AAA or by a flare.
18. S.O.S. S.O.S. Signal will be 3 Green Rockets.
19. BATTALION DUMPS. Battalion Dumps will be on OBSERVATION LINE between DURAND SAP and SAP 1.
20. REGIMENTAL AID POST. Regimental Aid Post will be at junction of QUARRY line and LA SALLE C.T. An overland route has been marked out with screw stakes and wire.
21. PRISONERS. Will be sent back with an escort of about 10% to Lieut. Martin at head of Tunnel, who will arrange for their being escorted to S. 25. a. 9. 2. - junction ARRAS - BETHUNE & Plank Road, where they will be taken over by a representative of the A.P.M. from whom a receipt will be obtained.
22. WATCHES. Watches will be synchronized with Adjutant at 10. p.m. on Y/2" night and again two hours before ZERO.
23. EQUIPMENT CLOTHING. Battle Order  
Leather Jerkins  
Box Respirator (Alert Position)  
1 P.H. Helmet  
Ground Sheet.
- RATIONS. 24 hours rations  
2 Iron Rations  
Filled Water Bottles.
- AMMUNITION ETC...... As per Schedule "B"
24. TRAFFIC REGULATIONS. "IN" GRANGE TUNNEL  
"OUT" 1. LA SALLE  
2. GRANGE, CROSS STREET, and FRANCE.
25. REPORTS. To Battalion Headquarters in GRANGE TUNNEL, near P. LINE.

J. D. MACLEOD,

Lieut./Adjutant.

- |                  |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. C.O.          | 9.7th C.I.B.             |
| 2. 2 i/c         | 10.P.P.C.L.I.            |
| 3. O.C. A Coy.   | 11.49th Cdn. Battalion   |
| 4. O.C. B "      | 12.54th Cdn. Battalion   |
| 5. O.C. C "      | 13.102nd. Cdn. Battalion |
| 6. O.C. D "      | 14.7th Bde. M.G. Coy.    |
| 7. Scout O.      | 15.7th Cdn. T.M. Battery |
| 8. Signalling O. | 16.7th Field Co., C.E.   |

## SCHEDULE "A"

INTENSE    SHRAPNEL    BARRAGE

	ZERO plus	to plus 3 "	3 6	Enemy front line 75 yards.
1st. Lift.				
2nd. "	"	6 "	8	75 "
3rd. "	"	8 "	17	75 "
4th "	"	17 "	20	75 "
5th "	"	20 "	23	75 "
6th "	"	23 "	26	75 "
7th "	"	26 "	29	75 "
8th "	"	29 "	32	75 "
(on to Intermediate Objective)				
9th Lift.	plus 32	to plus 75		150 " Barrage will rest on point 150 yards beyond Intermediate Objective.
10th. "	"	75 "	79	100 yards
11th. "	"	79 "	83	100 "
12th "	"	83 "	87	100 "
13th "	"	87 "	91	100 "
14th "	"	91 "	onwards	75 "

## SCHEDULE "B"

AMMUNITION      ETC.FIRST WAVE

120 Rounds S. A. A.  
 2 Mills No.5 carried in haversack.  
 2 Ground Flares, lower pocket  
 2 Sets S.O.S. (put up in sets in sandbags) per Company.  
 3 Sandbags per man carried on back.  
 9. Long Wire Cutters  
 20 Short " "  
     Hedging Gloves  
 25 Rounds Revolver Ammunition for men armed with Revolvers  
     Tools - Nil.  
     VERY Pistols and Lights as issued to the Company to be  
     distributed to Officers and N.C.Os.

SECOND WAVE

170 Rounds S. A. A.  
 2 Mills No.5 carried in haversack.  
 2 Ground Flares, in lower pocket  
 2 Sets S.O.S. per company  
 3 Sandbags per man carried on back  
     Shovels ) 5 shovels to 1 pick carried  
     Picks ) on mens backs  
 10 pair Wire Cutters  
     Hedging Gloves  
 25 Rounds Revolver Ammunition for men armed with revolvers  
     VERY Pistols and Lights as issued to the Company to be  
     distributed to Officers and N.C.Os.

The foregoing in addition to Specialists supplies with the exception S. A. A. of which Bombers, Signallers, Scouts, Runners, and Lewis Gunners will carry only 50 rounds, S. A. A.

Hedging Gloves will be put up in Sandbags - 19 pairs per bag, and left on the forward dump.



LEWIS GUN SECTION

- 50 Rounds S. A. A.
- 2 Mills No.5 carried in haversack.
- 25 Rounds revolver ammunition for men armed with revolvers.
- 32 Drums, the remainder to be left at Battalion Forward Dump.

BOMBING SECTION

- 10 No.5 Mills to be carried by the throwers
- 20 No.5.Mills to be carried by the carriers
- 50 Rounds S. A. A.
- 6 Smoke Bombs per Section
- 25 Rounds Revolver Ammunition for men armed with Revolvers.

RIFLE GRENADE SECTION

- 50 Rounds S. A. A.
- 50 Rounds Blank Ammunition
- 1 Smoke Bomb
- Carriers
- 15 Mills No.23

## SCHEDULE "C" -

DISPOSITION      SIGNALLERS

3 Telephonists and 2 linemen are detailed for duty at Battalion Headquarters,

3 Signallers are detailed for duty at Visual Station near Battalion O.P. They will spread a ground panel and receive any messages dropped from aeroplanes. 6 additional Signallers and 2 additional linemen will be at Battalion Headquarters. On the first objective being taken Signalling Officer, 6 Signallers and 2 linemen with Visual equipment, pigeons, and 2 'phones will proceed to BEGGAR STREET, laying wires as they go. On the ultimate objective being taken Signalling Officer, 3 Signallers, 1 'phone, pigeons, visual equipment, will proceed forward to the first objective.

## SCHEDULE "D"

CARRYING PARTY OF 50 MEN FOR THE 7TH FIELD COMPANY C.E.  
FOR CONSTRUCTION OF STRONG POINT 7 (S.22.b.4.O.)

to be furnished by A and C Companies.

will move forward close behind last wave of D Company,  
and construct S.P.7 at S.22.b.4.O. On completion this  
party will garrison Strong Point.

MATERIAL

27	Spools of Barbed Wire	1 per man
70	Short Screw Stakes	9 " "
36	Long Screw Stakes	4 " "
200	Sandbags	50 " "
85	Shovels )	
10	Picks )-----	1 " " carried on back
5	Axes )	
2	Large Wire Cutters	
10	Small Wire Cutters	
15	Pair Hedging Gloves.	

AMMUNITION

120	Rounds S. A. A.
2	Mills No.5 Carried in haversack.

## SCHEDULE "E"

CARRYING	PARTIES
ULTIMATE	OBJECTIVE

MATERIAL

The following material to be carried 50% by B and D Coys., respectively. In addition to the foregoing each man will carry 1 Shovel or pick strapped on the back.

30	Coils French wire,	1 Coil per man	30men
50	Long Screw Stakes,	4 per man	13 "
10	Axes		
50	Shovels, put up in bundles of 3 pr man	17 "	
12	picks		
			<u>60</u>
			=====

A and C Coys. will arrange their own parties for additional tools.

AMUNITION

120	Rounds S. A. A.
2	#5 Mills Bombs, carried in haversack.

RESERVE GRENADES.--

A. B. C. D. Companies will furnish carrying party of 6 men as follows:-

4 men	30 Mills No. 23	80
2 "	30 " " 5	<u>60</u>
		140
		=====

Carried in haversacks. In addition each man will carry two shovels.

## SCHEDULE "F"

DISPOSITION OF SCOUTS AND SNIPERS

At ZERO hour plus 3 Scout Officer, 2 Observers and 2 Battalion Runners will be in Battalion O.P. LONGFELLOW Crater. 7 Snipers will be in position on LONGFELLOW, DURAND and DUFFIELD Crater Lips. 6 Scouts will be at Battalion Headquarters. On Capture of intermediate objective, Scout Officer, 6 Scouts and 7 Snipers will move forward.\* Scout Officer and 6 Scouts will immediately locate dugout to serve as advanced Battalion Headquarters (report centre). 7 Snipers will take up position in BEGGAR STREET, but on capture of final objective, will immediately move forward 4 being detailed to Left Company and 3 to Right Company.

The 2 Battalion Runners will not move forward with Scout Officer.

The probable location of advanced Battalion Headquarters is BEGGAR STREET or STAUBWASSER WEG, near BEGGAR ST.

\* Snipers may move forward earlier if they think fit.

April 14th, 1917.

OFFICERS GOING INHEADQUARTERS,

Major	Stanley Counter	Horsworthy	O. C.
"	Royal Lindsay Hamilton	Ewing	2 i/c
Lieut.	James Duncan	Macleod,	Adjutant
"	Lorne Cuthbert	Montgomery,	Asst. Adjutant
"	Alexander James	McIntyre,	Scout Officer-Wd. 10.4.17
"	Ernest Williams	Ald,	Signalling Officer
"	Charles Stuart	Martin,	I/C Bn. Dumps

A COMPANY

Cpt.	Eric Barrett,	Finley,	Wounded 9.4.17
Lieut.	Richard John	Watten,	Killed 9.4.17
"	James Turner	Downey	

B COMPANY

Lieut.	Roy Farquhar	Studd,	
"	Douglas Farquharson	Small,	Killed 9.4.17
"	Harry Bernard	Trout,	Wounded 9.4.17

C COMPANY

Lieut.	John Trevor Lancelot	Shaw,	Wounded 9.4.17
"	Charles Burnaby	Tinling, (died of wounds)	Wounded 9.4.17
"	Myer Tutzer	Cohen,	
"	Geoffrey	Sheffield (died of wounds)	Wounded 9.4.17

D COMPANY

Major	Edson Raymond	Peace,	
Lieut.	Stanley	Macdonald,	Wounded 9.4.17
"	Gerald Scarlett	Ashby,	Wounded 10.4.17

---

Lieut.	Hilton, (42nd. Bn. R.H.C.)	7th T.M. Battery	Killed
"	Ewart	7th Field Co. C.E.	
"	Morris, E.R.	7th Bde. M.G. Coy.	
Capt.	Charles Beresford	Top, Liason Officer with 54th and 102nd. Battalion.	

By  
Major S. C. Morsworthy, MC.  
Commanding - 42nd. Battalion  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

THURSDAY, APRIL 5TH, 1917

1. **ATTENTION.** The 42nd. Battalion (less B and D Coys.) will relieve part of the 43rd. Battalion in the trenches of LA FOLIE SECTOR on W/X night.  
A Coy. will go into EMPIRE REDOUBT, and C Coy, will relieve the left Company of the 43rd. Battalion in the front line.  
On X/Y night A Coy. will move from EMPIRE REDOUBT into the Upper end of the GRANGE SUBWAY.  
B and D Coys., of the 42nd. Battalion will go into the line on X/Y night and B Company will be accommodated in GRANGE SUBWAY immediately in rear of A Coy.  
D Coy. will take over dugouts in EMPIRE REDOUBT vacated by A Coy.
2. **TIME OF START** On W/X Night the Battalion (less B and D Coys.) will parade at the Camp, ready to move off, at 7.00 p.m., and will pass the starting point P. 2. d. 4.9. at 7.30 p.m.  
**ORDER OF MARCH** the starting point P. 2. d. 4.9. at 7.30 p.m.  
Order of march will be:-  
Headquarters  
C Company  
A Company  
C and D Coys. on X/Y Night will parade at the Camp, ready to move off, at 7.00 p.m., and will pass the same starting point at 7.30pm.  
Order of march will be:-  
B Company  
D "
- On both nights Companies of the 42nd. Battalion will lead on the march to the trenches. They will be followed by P.P.C.L.I. and R.C.R. During the march intervals of 500 yards will be maintained between Battalions and 100 yards between platoons.
3. **ROUTE.** VILLERS AU BOIS - LAMOTTE FARM - (P. 2. d. 4.9.) P. 9. a. 0.7. - P. 9. a. 5.4. - P. 4. c. 0.3. - P. 4. c. 2. 1. BERTHONVAL FARM and PLANK ROAD
4. **OFFICERS BAGGAGE, ETC.** Officers Baggage, Mess Boxes, etc. for the trenches will be carried to a point to be selected by the Transport Officer and piled there, by 2.p.m. where it will be loaded and taken up on the ration train.  
Officers Beds, Men's blankets, and all articles for Q.M. Stores will be ready at 3.p.m. on day of relief.
5. **REPORTS** Units will report to Battalion Headquarters by Runner immediately relief is complete.
6. **NOTES.** No smoking will be permitted in SUBWAY after 8.p.m. on X/Y night  
Sanitary regulations will be strictly enforced.  
LA SALLE AVENUE is allotted to the 42nd. Battalion as a communication trench.

C.O. Bombing O.  
2 i/c Scout O.  
Adjutant Signl O.  
O.C. A Coy. 7th C.I.B.  
" B " M.O.  
" C " T.O.  
" D " Q.M.  
M.G. O. File.

J. D. MACLEOD,  
Lieut. /Adjutant

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

1

-----CC-----

-: OF :-

42<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION. - 3<sup>rd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM 1<sup>st</sup> May TO 31<sup>st</sup> May 1917

-----CC-----

VOLUME 20



WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 31st May, 1917.

Volume 20.

Diary Text

3 pages.

ORIGINAL

CONFIDENTIAL

20

2

WAR DIARY

for

MAY 1917.

42nd CANADIAN BATTALION.

*Hand*

**WAR DIARY**

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~CONFIDENTIAL~~

(Blanks leading out required.)

Summary of Events and Information

3

Memoranda and references to Appendices

Place Date Hour

**MAY 1st. 1917.**  
/5th \*

In Divisional Rest, Suburban Huts, **VILLERS AU BOIS**. This period was spent in the usual training. Fine bright weather.  
Lieut. R. Willcock, M.C. was awarded a Bar to his Military Cross for:-

"On April 1st 1917 at 6.45 a.m. N.E. of Neuville St Vaast, this Officer led a party of 30 O.R. (whom he had previously trained himself) with conspicuous coolness, gallantry and judgment, on a successful daylight raid, which penetrated to enemy second line and resulted in many dugouts containing Huns being bombed with Stokes bombs and destroyed, and a number of them being killed above ground by this party and the snipers, and one prisoner being taken alive. When a 4.5 shell fell short in his flank party dispersing it, Lieut. Willcock at great risk to himself moved from the centre to the flank and took personal charge.

Prior to this, on February 13th this Officer planned and trained a party for the successful raid which then took place, but his C.O. did not allow him to go over, although he volunteered to do so."

The following Officer reinforcements arrived:-

Lieut. C. G. Heward.  
" W. Hobart.

**MAY 6th 17.**  
" 7th "

A and D Coys., moved to the Goodman Tunnel, Quarries Area. The remainder of the Battalion moved up to the Quarries Area. While in Bde. support we furnished the usual Corps working parties on La Folie Road, and Tram-line from **NEUVILLE ST VAAST** to top of **VIMY RIDGE**.

" 10th "

Capt. John McNaughton, M.C. proceeded to the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade as Staff Learner.

" 11/12 "

The Battalion relieved the 5th C.M.R. in the left sub-section of the 3rd Canadian Division frontage N.E. of **VIMY**. During our period of 5 days in the line, active patrolling was carried on nightly, and the principal work was wiring across the front. No unusual incident to record.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Please heading not required.)

14

SHEET 2.

Summary of Events and Information

4

Remarks and references to Appendices

MAY 15th 17.

Major E. R. Pease proceeded to England on 30 days special leave,

" 16/17 "

The Battalion was relieved in the line by the 49th Canadian Battalion, Edmonton Regiment and moved into close support in the second line in front of VIMY where we remained for three days furnishing working parties, and were relieved on the night of the 19/20 by the 43rd Canadian Battalion and moved to the Quarries Area, Goodman Tunnel.

CASUALTIES during the tour . 1 Killed 2 Wounded.

" 19th 17

Major Bartlett McLennan D.S.O. promoted Lieut. Colonel, and his appointment to the command of the Battalion confirmed.

" 20th "

The Battalion was relieved in the Quarries Area by the 5th C.M.R. and moved to VILLERS AU BOIS . Here active training was started on the practice trenches.

" 21st "

The following decorations awarded in connection with operations April 9th 1917 at VIMY RIDGE.

Bar to MILITARY MEDAL.

418753 Sergt. L. Morrison.

MILITARY MEDAL.

418083 Sergt. A. B. Proven.  
 418295 " J. B. T. Montgomerie.  
 418736 " W. A. Brewer.  
 418784 " J. L. Davies.  
 418045 Corp'l. M. H. Drury.  
 418164 " E. L. Hosking.  
 419157 " W. Bestwetherick.  
 141158 " W. R. Baird.  
 418034 L/Cpl. H. Ward.  
 418129 " F. Lambert (deceased)  
 418363 " A. J. Hodge. (attached 7th C. I. Bde.

418654 Pte. J. D. Neafsey.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Inns heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
	MAY 22nd 17.		Lieut. H. L. Hoyles appointed Assistant Adjutant.		
	▪ 23rd ▪		Capt. A. J. deLotbiniere, Camp Commandant, CALONNE RICOURT, proceeded to England to attend Staff Course, Cambridge.		
			Lieut. R. Willcock. M. C. proceeded to Course at 1st Army School.		
			Following awards have been granted to O. R. of the 73rd Canadian Battalion transferred to this Battalion in connection with operations at VIMY RIDGE.		
			<b>MILITARY MEDAL.</b>		
			126753 Sergt. Orwandy. G.		
			132907 Corpl. McCarthy. J. G.		
			145471 Pte. Humble. J. B.		
			133305 " Thompson. T.		
			145084 " Argue. G. N.		
			133287 " Chapman. A. A.		
	MAY 25th 17		Lieut. M. A. Orford is attached to 7th Canadian T.M. Bty.		
	▪ 29th ▪		The Pipe Band took part in a performance of the Massed Pipe Bands of the Canadian Corps at Corps Headquarters at CAMBLAIN L'ABBE. A most interesting ceremony at which Field Marshall Sir Douglas Haig, Commander of the 1st Army, Corps Commander and many others were present.		
	MAY 30TH-31ST		Battalion still in Divisional Reserve, VILLERS AU BOIS.		

*Arthur M. Lawrence*  
Lieut. Col.

Cmdg. 42nd. Cdn. Battalion, R. H. C.

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

-----000-----

— OF —

43<sup>rd</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION - 3<sup>rd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM 1<sup>st</sup> June TO 2<sup>nd</sup> July 1917

-----000-----

VOLUME 21

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Cdn. Divn.

from 1st to 2nd July, 1917.

Volume 21.

Diary Text

14 Pages.

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2148. 24

~~THE~~  
~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Ease binding not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	References and references to Appendices
<i>Originals</i>			WAR DIARY FOR THE MONTH OF JUNE 1917	<i>Confidential</i>
			42ND CANADIAN BATTALION	
			5TH ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA	



\*Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Erased heading not required)

Place 1917	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	3	Remarks and references to Appendices
JUNE 1st to 5TH.			<p>The Battalion remained in Divisional Reserve at VILLERS AU BOIS. Practice for the raid was carried out over tape trenches daily. The weather continued fine and good progress was made. During this period a jumping off trench was dug by the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigades and 4th Canadian Division, about 100 yards in advance of our old front line on the area to be raided.</p> <p>(omitted from May Diary) On May 22nd. Lieut. C. F. Gifford proceeded on temporary duty at Canadian Corps Headquarters.</p> <p><u>June 1st.</u> <u>School.</u> Lieut. H. S. Fry returned to duty from Course of Instruction at Corps Training School.</p> <p>Lieut. L. H. Biggar returned from Lewis Gun Course, La Touquet, on which he proceeded May 22nd.</p> <p><u>June 2nd.</u> <u>School.</u> Lieut. E. A. McFall proceeded on Course of Instruction at Canadian Corps Training School.</p> <p>We received advice of the following Honours and Awards:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>LEGION D'HONNEUR</b> <b>Croix de Chevalier</b></p> <p>Capt. (A/Major) R. L. H. Ewing, M.C.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>MENTIONED IN DESPACHES.</b></p> <p>Capt. (A/Major) C. B. Topp, Lieutenant D. A. Bethune, (Att. 3rd. Canadian Division) " W. W. DeRossiter, " D. B. Gilmour, (73rd. Cdn. Bn.) 418785 Sergt. S. J. Douglas, (7th C.I.B.) 132031 Coy. Sgt. Major W. FitzGerald, (73rd. Cdn. Bn.) (Deceased)</p> <p>Following Officers reported from 3rd. Entrenching Bn. and were posted to companies</p>		

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Cdn. Bn., R.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118.

No. Sheet 2

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Please heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	4	Remarks and references to Appendices
1917					
JUNE 1ST. - 5TH Cont.			<p>as under:</p> <p>Lieut. A. Fleming, to B Company " J.M. Morris, " C "</p> <p><u>June 4th.</u> We received advice of the following Honours and Awards:</p> <p><u>MENTIONED IN DESPATCHES</u> Captain (The Rev.) G. G. D. Kilpatrick,</p> <p>Following Officer reinforcements arrived and were posted to companies as under:</p> <p>Lieut. G. A. Parkins, to A Company " A. G. Johnston, " B "</p>		
JUNE 6TH.			The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the QUARRIES AREA. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion moved from billets at VILLERS AU BOIS relieving the 58th Cdn. Battalion in GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA.		
JUNE 7TH.			The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade relieved the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade in the front line. The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion moved from GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA relieving part of the 2nd. and 5th C.M.Re. in the front line. Our area extended from the junction of AMHERST and GASPE trenches to 75 yards West of the Railway Line. The front line and jumping off trenches were held by B Company, C and D Companies being in Support trenches, and A Company in dugouts under railway.		
JUNE 8TH.			<p>Lieut. F. W. G. Hale was admitted to hospital with a sprained ankle.</p> <p>The work of trench destruction and wire cutting on the area to be raided was continued by our artillery, and completed in very satisfactory fashion.</p> <p>The following is brief scheme of the raid: The raid was carried out by the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade, in conjunction with the 4th Canadian Division who raided on our left. Three battalions of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade took part, jumping off as follows:</p>		

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Erase heading not required.)

\* Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices																											
JUNE 8TH			<p>The R.C.R. astride Vimy-Avion Railway., The 42nd. Cdn. Battalion from 75 yards West of Railway to junction of GASPE and AMHERST trenches, and the 49th Cdn. Battalion from junction of GASPE and AMHERST to Brigade boundary at about T.1.c. central.</p> <p>The 87th Bn. of the 11th Canadian Infantry Brigade were on the left of the 49th Battalion, P.P.C.L.I. were in Brigade Reserve.</p> <p>The 42nd. Canadian Battalion objectives were as follows:  <b>FIRST OBJECTIVE/</b> Enemy front line and ACORN trenches from points about 40 to 80 yds. respectively west of junction with BEAVER trench to a point in ACE Trench 75 yards west of LENS-ARRAS Railway.  <b>FINAL OBJECTIVE/</b> ADEPT Trench from footpath about 30 yards west of junction with BEAVER Trench to a point 75 yards west of LENS-ARRAS Railway.</p> <p>Our dispositions were as follows:            B and D Companies raided first objective - B Coy. on Right, D Coy. on left            A and C Companies leap-frogged at the first objective and raided final objective - A Coy. on Right, C Coy. on left.            Only one platoon of B Company went over; the remainder of the company - under Major Topp, garrisoned our front line and jumping off trenches.</p> <p>Following went over in the raid:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Major</td> <td>S. J. Mathewson, M.C.</td> <td>A Coy.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut.</td> <td>M. T. Cohen,</td> <td>A "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"</td> <td>E. D. LeMoine,</td> <td>A "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"</td> <td>B. Huser, M.M.</td> <td>C "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"</td> <td>C. Watt,</td> <td>C "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"</td> <td>E. J. Donnelly,</td> <td>B "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Capt.</td> <td>J. C. Stewart,</td> <td>D "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Lieut.</td> <td>J. T. Downey,</td> <td>D "</td> </tr> <tr> <td>"</td> <td>R. W. Gee,</td> <td>D "</td> </tr> </table> <p>and 420 Other Ranks.</p> <p>Lieut. Biggar assisted by Lieut. Morris was in charge of Battalion Dumps and evacuation of wounded from our front line back. Major Topp rendered valuable service in</p>	Major	S. J. Mathewson, M.C.	A Coy.	Lieut.	M. T. Cohen,	A "	"	E. D. LeMoine,	A "	"	B. Huser, M.M.	C "	"	C. Watt,	C "	"	E. J. Donnelly,	B "	Capt.	J. C. Stewart,	D "	Lieut.	J. T. Downey,	D "	"	R. W. Gee,	D "	5
Major	S. J. Mathewson, M.C.	A Coy.																													
Lieut.	M. T. Cohen,	A "																													
"	E. D. LeMoine,	A "																													
"	B. Huser, M.M.	C "																													
"	C. Watt,	C "																													
"	E. J. Donnelly,	B "																													
Capt.	J. C. Stewart,	D "																													
Lieut.	J. T. Downey,	D "																													
"	R. W. Gee,	D "																													

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Enter heading not required)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Page	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	6	Remarks and references to Appendix
1917	JUNE 8TH.				
Cont.			getting back prompt information to Battalion Headquarters of the progress of the raid.		
			About 10.30 p.m. Col. McLennan and Major Ewing with Orderly Room Staff and Runners, proceeded to Advanced HQ. in BLUENOSE Trench.		
			Following is our official report of the raid:		
		11.30pm.	Raiding party of 9 Officers and 420 O.R. reported in the jumping off trenches, and Brigade, and Battalions on our right and left advised to this effect.		
		11.45pm.	Artillery and Machine Gun barrage opened.		
		11.51 "	Enemy's barrage opened 4.1's and 5.9's - mostly on Bois de la Chaudiere, Bluenose, and Support Areas.		
		12.25am.	Message received First Objective reached. Telephone lines went out and this communication was forwarded to Brigade by Artillery wire.		
		12.43am.	Observers reported that flares were now coming from near Avion. These messages were sent to Brigade		
		12.47am.	Message by runner received from Major Mathewson to the effect that he was mopping up final objective. This and subsequent messages were sent to Brigade through Artillery wire.		
		12.55am.	Party reported back with 2 captured Machine Guns and a few prisoners.		
		12.59am.	Lieut. J. T. Downey who was slightly wounded, reported. At the same time Caryl Wilson returned and reported few enemy in the final objective. Digouts badly damaged. Casualties slight.		
		1.10am.	Message by runner received from Capt. Stewart, O.C. First Objective, to the effect that he was in touch with the Battalions on either flank.		
		1.15am.	Visual message received by lamps "We are in" Rocket was reported. Withdrawal signal from rear.		
		1.16am.	Artillery Lines went out.		
		1.45am.	6 Signal rockets for withdrawal were sent up. At the same time our telephone communication to Brigade opened.		
		1.53am.	Message received from Major Topp "Coys. are returning in good order. Few casualties"		
		2.04am.	Communication over Artillery Lines re-opened.		
		2.06am.	Lieut. LeMoine reported at Headquarters that "A" Company were in.		
		2.15am.	Message received from Capt. Stewart that all parties had passed through "ACE"		

Sheet 5

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

XXX

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

Place 1917	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
JUNE 9TH.		2.15	withdrawing covering party from ACE.	
		2.20am.	Lieut. Cohen "A" Company, reported to Battalion Hq. Estimated casualties of the Company one dead and about nine wounded. Saw many German dead. Message sent to O.C. "B" situation normal, replace garrison	
		2.25am.	Telephoned to Brigade Major and informed him as to situation.	
		2.30am.	Wired Brigade "Situation normal, reports indicate very slight casualties. Operations most successful, two Machine Guns and crews captured, Have not received report as to number of prisoners yet. Many Germans dead reported"	
		3.00am.	Code Message "SHERRY" sent Brigade. At the same hour enemy artillery very active, shelling BLUENOSE, GASPE, and Jumping Off Trenches, also their own front line. Our Artillery continues active.	
		3.07am.	Last of wounded being evacuated through our front line.	
		4.57am.	Estimated casualties 50 including 4 killed, others mostly walking cases. Estimated prisoners taken 25.	
		5.15am.	All our dead and wounded brought down. Report from Battalion frontage that the enemy continued intermittent shelling on their own front line with 4.1's and 5.9's.	
			<u>REPORT OF OBSERVERS.</u>	
		11.44 pm.	Our barrage opened	
		11.45 pm.	Enemy Orange spray flare on our front. -- Green light opposite R.C.R. front, also orange spray.	
		11.50pm.	Enemy barrage on our front line fairly intense.	
		11.55pm.	Enemy Barrage on BLUENOSE in T.7.d. and west along Halifax.	
		11.57pm.	2 green flares opposite our right flank.	
		12.02am.	Enemy barrage heaviest about junction of PICTOU and HALIPAX, also in BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE.	
		12.11am.	No flares of any kind going up on front.	
		12.13am.	Enemy putting up "VERY" Lights from considerably farther in rear than ordinarily.	
		12.16am.	Red Rocket opposite our left flank.	
		12.21am.	Our signalling lamp observed in enemy line.	
		12.25am.	Enemy shelling decreasing.	
		12.30am.	Green flares far in rear opposite R.C.R. front.	

R.S.

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Sheet 6

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erased heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

Page	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	8	Remarks and references to Appendices
1917	JUNE 9TH.	12.35am.	Green flare in enemy line opposite 49th front. Enemy M.G. firing on BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE.		
		12.39am.	Green flare opposite our front well in rear of AVION Trench.		
		12.40am.	Two green flares opposite R.C.R. front.		
		12.50am.	Enemy ceased shelling on R.C.R. front.		
		12.52am.	Enemy shelling on our front still decreasing.		
		1.02am.	Our barrage opened on enemy lines on right of our Brigade.		
		1.14am.	Two rockets bursting into vari-coloured spray put up in our rear.		
		1.28am.	Two green lights opposite our right flank.		
		1.30am.	One green light sent up from AVION. Enemy renewed shelling on our front trenches.		
		1.32am.	Enemy golden chain rockets opposite our left flank well in rear.		
		1.46am.	Enemy putting up numerous white flares well in rear.		
		1.48am.	Succession of rockets going up in our rear and on our left bursting into vari-coloured spray.		
		1.54am.	Golden chain rockets going up in enemy rear lines on our front, also 49th front.		
			<u>REPORT OF SCUMPS.</u>		
			<u>Enemy fire:</u> No serious obstacles. Isolated pieces intact, but gaps plentiful.		
			<u>Enemy Trenches:</u> No revetment. Practically useless as trenches from our shell fire.		
			<u>Digouts:</u> Plentiful in ACE and ACORN trenches. Majority of entrances blown in. Digouts on ACE between BEVEL and BEAVER contained considerable number of Germans who were reluctant to come up.		
			<u>T.M. &amp; M.G.</u>		
			<u>EMPLACEMENTS:</u> None noted.		
			<u>Listening Posts:</u> Indications of one in front of enemy wire at approx. T.1.d.O.6.		
			<u>Remarks:</u> Quantities of arms and equipment scattered around indicated hasty flight.		
			<u>GENERAL</u>		
			In connection with the attack on our left; at 8.30 p.m. it was		

R/S

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.**

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	9	Remarks and references to Appendices
JUNE 9TH.			<p>noticed that the enemy artillery fire in our area was very erratic. La Chaudiere Wood, Bluenose Trench, Railroad, Lens-Arras Road, and the batteries in front of railroad switch were all shelled rapidly in turn and gave the impression that the enemy was much bewildered.</p> <p>The enemy's artillery continued active on our area until about 10 p.m. During the time our companies were moving into the assembly trenches it was not heavy.</p> <p>At 11.45 p.m. when our barrage was put down, the enemy sent up several green rockets at different points. Enemy barrage was put down in 6 minutes on BOIS DE LA CHAUDIERE, BDUENOSE, and our Support Trenches and also at GASPE and SYDNEY Trenches, our old front line. 5 minutes later the enemy began shelling points in our back area with shrapnel. Our company Officers are agreed that the wire on our front had been well cut. The pace of the barrage proved satisfactory. Our men were able to keep up to it as a result several machine guns were disposed of before they could come fully into action. Touch was maintained with Battalions on both flanks throughout the advance. An effort at resistance was made in several cases by Machine Gun crews, although on the whole we think it was less determined than on April 9th. With the exception of the Machine Gun crews, the enemy either fled or surrendered easily. Enemy losses in their trenches were heavy, and many more must have been killed by running into our Artillery and M.G. barrages, and in dugouts from which a considerable number were found in ACE and ADEPT trenches and a few in ACORN.</p> <p>The practice over the tape trenches proved of the greatest value both in the assault and the withdrawal. The latter was carried out deliberately, and all our casualties including killed were brought out. It was greatly assisted by two lines of white tape which were laid from our final objectives to our jumping off trenches. An overland route was also taped and trenches bridged from our front line back to our Dressing Station, following the low ground on the left of our area which observation shows to be comparatively free from shell fire. This proved invaluable, not only for stretcher carrying parties but in enabling the raiding parties to get quickly back to their places in support and second line trenches.</p> <p>The effort to establish telephone communication with the final objective was unsuccessful. Not only did these lines go out almost immediately, but the overland lines between Battalion Headquarters and Brigade Advance Report Centre were continually cut. Visual station (Lucas lamp) was established in the final objective, but on account of the heavy smoke in the early stages of the operation, it was of practically no service. The service by runners from attacking companies was most satisfactory. The enemy did not attempt to counter-attack on our front.</p>		
			<p>255 Wt. 5450/1434 700,000 5/15 D.D.&amp;L. ADSS, Form C. 2118.</p>		

*Handwritten initials*





**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Cross heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	ii	Remarks and references to Appendices
1917 JUNE 9TH.			<p><b><u>REPORT ON COMMUNICATIONS DURING RAID NIGHT JUNE 8th/9th.</u></b></p> <p><u>Telephone</u> A line was laid forward from our front line to first Objective. This line ran to a report centre in ACE trench which was established at zero plus 11. A continuation of this line was then run to the final objective and a station established there at zero plus 37. These lines did not go out during the entire show and messages were sent on them at different times by Officers Commanding first and final objectives. The station at final objective withdrew with the company commander and the station at first objective withdrew after having sent a message back from the Officer Commanding to that effect. Both these stations were kept open until all the troops in the trench with the exception of covering parties had withdrawn. The line from our front line back to Battalion Headquarters could not be maintained and all messages coming back were taken from front line to Battalion HQ. by runner.</p> <p><u>Visual.</u> Lamp stations were established at First and Final Objectives. The station at final objective O.K'd back to Headquarters but as phone lines were in no messages were sent back by lamp from here. The lamp station at final objective could not be seen. All messages telephone were verbal.</p> <p>(Sgd). y. W. Auld, Lieut. Sig. Sec.</p>		
			<p><b><u>ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS TO BE ADDED TO REPORT OF RAID OF 8th/9th INSR. 4 June 10th, 1917</u></b></p> <p><u>Trophies.</u> Please note that our Summary of Machine Guns should be:- 3 machine guns captured, one of which was a new light Machine Gun 1917 pattern. There were other guns encountered but these were destroyed. In the destruction of dugouts our men used Stokes Shells instead of mobile charges, and for conditions existing in the area they were most effective.</p>		
			<p><u>Re Communications.</u> Attached report of the Signalling Officer. His work was in some effect</p>		

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.E.C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Sheet 10

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This pages will be prepared in manuscript.

File	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices																		
1917 9TH / JUNE 10TH.			<p>neutralised as lines of communication in rear of our front lines were practically out of Commission throughout the raid.</p> <p><u>Prisoners.</u> The number claimed in the first report was 26 for which we hold receipts, but we believe we turned in a total of 43 to Military Police at the straggler posts, and there were three wounded prisoners, making a total of 46.</p> <p><u>Casualties.</u></p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>Killed</td> <td>5</td> <td>O.R.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Died of wounds</td> <td>1</td> <td>"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Wounded 2 Officers</td> <td>68</td> <td>"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Unaccounted for</td> <td>1</td> <td>"</td> </tr> </table> <p><u>Referring to the damage inflicted.</u> The subsequent report of those taking part would indicate that the casualties inflicted were very heavy, and these were caused by raiding party and the destruction of dugouts, the preliminary bombardment and the barrage, and there is no doubt there must have been heavy casualties in rear of our final objective as many of the enemy's garrison had fled and would have come under the Machine Gun and Artillery Barrage in rear, and this was confirmed by observation along the front of the large numbers of the enemy seen to be evacuating wounded.</p> <p>(Sgd) Lieut. Col. Cndg. 42nd. Bn. REC</p> <p>It had been hoped that the enemy would continue for some time in ignorance of the fact that we had evacuated the raided trenches, but very early on the 9th carrying parties could be seen moving about the raided area evacuating wounded under the protection of the white flag.</p> <p>June 9th. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion took over the battle frontage (for previous evening's raid) relieving two companies of the R.C.R. on the right and one company of the 49th Canadian Battalion on the left. This required the entire battalion in the front line. Our disposition being as follows:</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>A Company on the right</td> <td>C Company astride VIMY-AVION Railway</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B " on Battle Frontage D "</td> <td>on the Battle Frontage of the</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>49th Canadian Battalion.</td> </tr> </table>	Killed	5	O.R.	Died of wounds	1	"	Wounded 2 Officers	68	"	Unaccounted for	1	"	A Company on the right	C Company astride VIMY-AVION Railway	B " on Battle Frontage D "	on the Battle Frontage of the		49th Canadian Battalion.	12
Killed	5	O.R.																				
Died of wounds	1	"																				
Wounded 2 Officers	68	"																				
Unaccounted for	1	"																				
A Company on the right	C Company astride VIMY-AVION Railway																					
B " on Battle Frontage D "	on the Battle Frontage of the																					
	49th Canadian Battalion.																					

Sheet 11

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Brass heading not required)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. These pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	13	Remarks and references to Appendices
JUNE 9TH-10TH	1917		<p>June 9th This frontage was occupied for four days when the 4th Division took over the line to a point 50 yards east of VICTORIA Rd., and B Company extended left to the latter point enabling D Company to move into Support in the dugouts under the Railway.</p> <p>The balance of the tour (June 7th to 13th) was without special incident. Very fair progress was made in replacing our wire which we had cut by hand early on the evening of the raid.</p> <p>The enemy's offensive activity was entirely centered in the use of his light Trench Mortars. C, B, and D Companies each suffered a few casualties from this cause, and they would have undoubtedly been much heavier but for the excellent support given us by our Divisional Artillery.</p> <p>At the end of the tour the C.O. wrote a formal letter expressing appreciation of the very satisfactory work of Lieut. L. McGillivray, of the 33rd. C.P.A. who acted as liaison Officer during the entire tour.</p> <p>Lieut. H. A. Sewell joined the Battalion and was posted to D Company.</p> <p>June 10th. We received advice of the following Honours and Awards:</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>D. S. O.</u> Major S. C. Norworthy, M.C. Capt. E. R. Pease,</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>THE MILITARY CROSS</u> Captain W. Hale, M.O. Lieut. J.T.L. Shun,</p>		
JUNE 12TH.			<p>We received advise of the following Honours and Awards.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>MILITARY MEDAL</u> 133316 L/Cpl. Combs, M.R. 145373 Sgt. Lush, J.</p>		
JUNE 13TH.			<p>The 42nd. Canadian Battalion was relieved in the front line by the 58th Canadian Battalion, and moved into Support in GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA.</p>		

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY**

(Erased heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	14	Remarks and references to Appendices
JUNE 14TH-JULY 2ND.			<p>The Battalion remained in GOODMAN TUNNEL AREA. Working parties (running as high as 420 on one or two nights/) were furnished. The principal work was the construction of a trench down the eastern slope of VIMY RIDGE connecting BLUE and BLIGHTY trenches, deepening the latter, and connecting with GLACE BAY trench. Towards the end of the period when the enemy had withdrawn from AVION working parties were furnished filling shell holes and trench crossings on VICTORIA RD, which was made passable as far as AVION Trench.</p> <p>Permission was obtained to carry on inoculation at the rate of 100 men every second day, in this way the entire battalion was inoculated.</p> <p>Small special classes were also carried on in Lewis Gun and Rifle Grenade instruction, and an N.C.O's class under the Battn. Sergeant Major was held at the Transport Line, Two men per company practised with the Bn. Snipers on a range established in LONGFELLOW Crater. The remainder of the Battalion, who were not on working parties or inoculated, carried on P.T., Bayonet Fighting, and Close Order Drill, from 9 a.m. till noon daily.</p> <p>During this period the enemy's artillery was not active on the Support Area and our casualties were extremely light.</p>		
	June 18th		Lieut. M. A. Orford (Att. 7th. Cdn. T.M. Battery) was admitted to hospital sick.		
	June 21st.		We received advice of the following Honours and Awards:		
			<p style="text-align: center;"><b>MEDALLE MILITAIRE</b> 193598 Pte. C. L. Myles, D.C.M.</p>		
			Following proceeded on 14 Day Course of Instruction at 3rd. Divisional School		
			<p style="text-align: center;">Lieut. G. A. Parkins,     A Coy. "     A. G. Johnston,     B     " "     J. M. Morris,         C     "</p>		
	June 22nd. School.		Lieut. E. A. McFall returned from Course of Instruction, Cdn. Corps Training School.		
	June 29TH.		Lieut. R. Willcock, M.C. returned from Course of Instruction 1st. Army School.		
			2353 Wt. W5511/1456 700,000 5/15 D.D.&L. ADSS/Form C. 2118.		

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Cdn. Battalion, R.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Secret 13

~~CONFIDENTIAL - SECURITY INFORMATION~~

(Stamps handling not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices																
1917				15																
JUNE 14TH-JULY 2ND.	June 30th		<p>We received advice of the following Honours and Awards in connection with the raid of June 8th.</p> <p><u>BAR TO MILITARY MEDAL</u> 419157 Sergt. Bewsworthick, W.</p> <p><u>THE MILITARY MEDAL</u></p> <table> <tr> <td>132088</td> <td>Sergt. Hopkins, E.W.</td> <td>418412</td> <td>Pte. MacDonald, D.J.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>126296</td> <td>Cpl. Loughleen, W.</td> <td>418855</td> <td>Sgt. Gray, J.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>132113</td> <td>Sgt. Chatham, F.O.</td> <td>418896</td> <td>Cpl. McKeown, P.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>192390</td> <td>L/Cpl. Taylor, W.J.</td> <td>418233</td> <td>Sgt. Merton, W.R.</td> </tr> </table> <p>During the last week of June Col. Dyer, D.S.O., assumed command of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in succession to General A. C. Macdonell, C.B., C.M.G., D.S.O., promoted to Command 1st. Canadian Division.</p> <p>Capt. J. McNaughton, M.C. accompanied Gen. Macdonell as Orderly Officer.</p>	132088	Sergt. Hopkins, E.W.	418412	Pte. MacDonald, D.J.	126296	Cpl. Loughleen, W.	418855	Sgt. Gray, J.	132113	Sgt. Chatham, F.O.	418896	Cpl. McKeown, P.	192390	L/Cpl. Taylor, W.J.	418233	Sgt. Merton, W.R.	
132088	Sergt. Hopkins, E.W.	418412	Pte. MacDonald, D.J.																	
126296	Cpl. Loughleen, W.	418855	Sgt. Gray, J.																	
132113	Sgt. Chatham, F.O.	418896	Cpl. McKeown, P.																	
192390	L/Cpl. Taylor, W.J.	418233	Sgt. Merton, W.R.																	
			<p><i>Dwight W. Leman</i></p> <p>Lieut. Col. Cndg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.H.C.</p>																	

No 22

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

-----oOo-----

-: OF :-

*43<sup>rd</sup>*

CANADIAN BATTALION.

*3<sup>rd</sup>*

CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM

*1<sup>st</sup> July*

TO

*31<sup>st</sup> July 1917*

-----oOo-----

VOLUME *22*

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 31st July, 1917.

Volume 22.

Diary Text

4 Pages.

Appendix A.

Operation Order No. 131 dated the 2nd July, 42nd Bn. to relieve 116th Bn. on night June 2nd and 3rd

Operation Order No. 132 dated the 6th July, Inter-Co. relief on the 6th/7th.

Operation Order No. 133 dated the 8th July, 42nd Bn. to be relieved by 2nd C.M.R. on night 10th and 11th.

Operation Order No. 134 dated the 18th July, 42nd Bn. less D Company will relieve 116th Bn. on the 18th and 19th September.

Operation Order No. 135, Instructions re move of Bn. on the 25th to LOZINGHAM & March table attached

Original

Confidential

War Diary.

July 1917

H 2nd Canadian Battalion



## WAR DIARY

or

~~CONFIDENTIAL - SECURITY~~

(When heading not required.)

Army Form C, 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<u>JULY 1st 1917</u>		The Battalion was still in Divisional Support GOODMAN TUNNEL Area.	
	<u>" 2/3rd "</u>		On the night July 2/3rd the Battalion moved into the line relieving the 116th Canadian Battalion in the centre sub-section AVION Area, the 49th Canadian Battalion were on the right, and the P.P.C.L.I. on the left., the front and outpost lines being taken over by "D" Company on the right of the VIMY - AVION Railway and "B" Company on the left. "C" Company., were in support in ADEPT and AGENT Trenches. "A" Company were in reserve in PARTRIDGE Trench 1 (old front line.) On the night of relief enemy's artillery was very active "A" Company had 4 casualties from shell fire while assembling at GOODMAN TUNNEL to move off, "D" Company had 5 casualties on the way in.	X/X
	<u>" 2nd 27.</u>		Lieut. R. W. Gee and 7 O.R. returned from First Army Rest Camp. Major R. L. H. Ewing returned from English leave. Lieuts. G. A. Parkins, J. M. Morris and A. G. Johnstone returned from Courses of Instruction. Capt. H. K. Beveridge, M. C. proceeded on English leave. Capt. Hale, M. C. the Battalion, M. O. was admitted to Hospital sick and Capt. Harvey C. A. M. C. 9th Field Ambulance was temporarily attached to the Battalion.	X/X
	<u>" 3rd 27.</u>		Lieut. H. A. Sewell and 18 O.R. proceeded on Course of Instruction 3rd Divisional School. Lieut. Lemoine and 4 O.R. proceeded to General Course at Corps School. Lieut. H. B. Trput and 4 O.R. proceeded to Sniping Course at Corps School. C. S. M. Scott and 9 O.R. proceeded to First Army Rest Camp. Lieut. H. E. Cook was wounded and admitted to Hospital.	X/X
	<u>" 6/7th 17.</u>		On the night 6/7th an inter-company relief took place "C" Company took over the right sub-section and "A" Company the left sub section.	X/X
	<u>" 9th 17</u>		Major. S. C. Norworthy, D. S. O., M. C., and Lieut. H. Hamer proceeded on English leave. Major. R. L. H. Ewing M. C., attended the French Investiture at ELENDRETTES to receive	X/X

WAR DIARY

Army Form C, 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Encls. heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	References and references to Appendices
	<u>JULY 10th 17.</u>		The Distinguished Conduct Medal was awarded No. 419040 Sergt. E. Greaves for conspicuous gallantry during the raid on the night 8/9th June. 1917.	
	<u>" 10/11th 17</u>		The Battalion was relieved on the night 10/11th July by the 2nd C.M.R. and moved to ZOUAVE VALLEY. This tour in the line was notable for the intensity of the enemy's shelling with Artillery and heavy Trench Mortars. The Battalion occupied part of the village of AVION, and excellent observation was obtained from ruined houses on enemy movement, and good co-operation existed with Field Artillery, which resulted in the engaging of a number of opportunity targets. In one shoot the enemy demolished all the houses on a street occupied by "C" company, including the knocking down of the house, the cellars of which were the advanced Company Headquarters. Enemy aircraft were abnormally active and repeatedly flew over our lines at a low altitude, firing their machine guns on the troops. Our casualties for the tour were:- Lieut. H. E. Cook M.M. and 44 O.R. wounded. 15 B.R. Killed and Died of Wounds.	X/11
	<u>" 11th 17</u>		On the 11th the Battalion moved from Divisional Support, ZOUAVE VALLEY to VANCOUVER CAMP, CHATEAU DE LA HAIE.	X/12
	<u>" 12th 17</u>		Capt. W. Hale. M. C. returned to Battalion from Hospital and Capt. Harvey reported back to his unit.	X/12
	<u>" 14th "</u>		The following Officer reinforcements reported. Lieut. W. C. Baber. " E. S. Turner. " G. S. Ashby,	X/12
	<u>" 15th "</u>		Capt. J. K. Beveridge, M. C. returned from English leave.	X/12

## WAR DIARY

OF

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	5	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<u>JULY 17th 1917.</u>		<p>Lieuts. E. J. Donnelly and M. T. Cohen and 14 O.R. proceeded to Course of Instruction 3rd Canadian Divisional Training School.</p> <p>The undermentioned decorations were awarded in connection with the raid on 8/9th June.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>BAR TO MILITARY CROSS.</u></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Capt. S. J. Mathewson. M. C.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><u>THE MILITARY CROSS.</u></p> <p style="text-align: center;">Lieut(A/Capt) J. C. Stewart. " J. T. Downey.</p> <p>Lieuts. J. D. MacLeod and R. F. Stadd, proceeded to PARIS on leave.</p>		
	<u>JULY 18th 1917.</u>		<p>Lieuts Fry and Turner and "B" Company were attached to the 172nd Tunnelling Coy., They proceeded to LA COULOTTE for work during our tour in Divisional Support.</p> <p>418001 E. S. M. MacFarlane, P. W. was awarded The Distinguished Conduct Medal.</p>		
	<u>JULY 19th</u>	"	<p>The Battalion less 1 Company moved from VANCOUVER CAMP, CHATEAU DE LA HAIE, on the afternoon of the 10th to COMOX CAMP, adjoining BERTHOVAL WOOD.</p> <p>During our stay in Divisional Reserve the usual training was carried on, great interest being taken in Musketry, the Battalion having the ranges for 2 days. Competitive shoots were held and prizes awarded to the highest scorers, and the coaches on the best targets.</p> <p>Lieut. Col. McLennan, D. S. O., and Capt. H. B. Macdougall proceeded on English leave.</p>		
	" 20th	"	<p>Capt. J. C. Stewart admitted to Hospital sick.</p>		
	" 21st	"	<p>Lieut. H. Hamer returned from English leave.</p>		
	" 23rd	"	<p>Major. S. C. Norworthy, D. S. O., M. C., returned from English leave.</p>		
			<p>continued.</p>		

## WAR DIARY


Army Form C. 2113.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

42nd. Canadian Bn., R. H. C.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	6	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<u>JULY 23RD, 1917.</u>	Cont.	During the tour in Divisional Support the Battalion furnished working parties, the principal work being on winter horse standings, CARENCY. For those not employed on this work, specialists training and tactical exercises were carried on.		2/12
	<u>JULY 25TH, 1917.</u>		The Battalion moved from COMOX CAMP to Divisional Rest at LOZINGHEM, staging on the night 25/26th at GAUCHIN Legal.		2/12
	<u>JULY 26th, 1917.</u>		Capt. J. C. Stewart reported back from Hospital. Lieuts. Donnelly and M. T. Cohen reported from Course of Instruction at 3rd. Canadian Division Training School.		2/12
	<u>JULY 28TH, 1917.</u>		Lieut. H. B. Trout returned from Sniping Course and Lieut. J. B. LeMoine returned from General Course, at Canadian Corps School.		2/12
	<u>JULY 30TH, 1917.</u>		Capt. J. C. Stewart, MC. and Capt. Wm. Hale, MC. proceeded on leave to England. Capt. J. A. Briggs (C.A.M.C.) being temporarily attached to the Battalion as M.O. during Captain Hale's leave.		2/12
	<u>JULY 31ST, 1917</u>		Lt. Col. B. McLennan, DSO. and Capt. H. B. Macdougall, returned from English leave.  During this portion of the Divisional Rest training was vigorously carried on, special attention being paid to Musketry and smartening up in drill.  Copies of Battalion Operation Orders issued during the month are attached.		2/12 2/12
			 Lieutenant Colonel		

By  
Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.  
Comdg. 42nd. Battalion.  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

REF:- 36c S.W. 1/10,000.

MONDAY, JULY 2nd. 1917.

1. INFORMATION. On the night 2nd/3rd June 1917, 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. will relieve 9th Cdn. Inf. Bde. in the line.
2. INTENTION. The Battalion will relieve 118th Canadian Battalion in the centre sub-section. The 49th Cdn. Battn. will be on our right and the P.P.C.L.I. on our left.
3. ORDER OF MARCH. The Battalion will move off as follows:- with intervals of 100 yards between platoons, and at least 200 yards between companies:-
- |               |           |
|---------------|-----------|
| Headquarters. | 9.45 p.m. |
| D Company     | 10.00 "   |
| B "           | 10.15 "   |
| C "           | 10.30 "   |
| A "           | 10.45 "   |
4. DISPOSITION. On completion of relief companies will be distributed as follows:-
- Front Line. D Company on the right - three platoons in the Outpost Line, Astride railway.  
One Platoon in Support.  
B Company on the left - two platoons in the Outpost Line and two platoons in AVION Trench.
- Support Line. C Company in AGENT and ADEPT trenches.  
A Company in old front line and PART-RIDGE Trenches.
5. SIGNALS. The Signal Section will proceed in advance of the Bn. and will arrange relief with the Signalling Officer of 118th Cdn. Battalion.
6. PARTIES. Advance parties of 1 Officer and 2 N.C.O.'s per Coy. will be sent under company arrangements to take over trench stores etc.
7. RATIONS. 24 hrs rations will be issued and carried in on the men. All water bottles will be filled.
8. BAGGAGE. Officers kits, mess boxes, Orderly Room boxes, etc, for the trenches will be piled near Orderly Room by 9 p.m. Officers servants will accompany pack train.
9. LEWIS GUNS. Lewis Guns and Discs must be ready at Orderly Room by 8.45 p.m. to be loaded on limbers. Company Commanders will detail 1 man per crew to accompany limbers. They will be picked up by Companies on their way to trenches at junction of LENS - ARRAS Roads.
10. KITCHENS. Teams will report for kitchens at 7 p.m.
11. INSPECTION OF BILLETS. Billets will be cleaned and free of men, ready for inspection at 9.30 p.m.
12. GUIDES. Guides from 118th Canadian Battalion will be picked up by Companies at junction of LENS-ARRAS and VICTORIA Rds
13. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS. Battalion Headquarters will be in BLUEHOSE Trench at T.7.d.7.7.

14 REPORTS.

8

Companies will report completion of relief by 'phone, using code message = Rations received at .....

They will also report relief by runner who will bring copy of trench stores.

H.L.HOXLES.

Lieut. Asst. Adjutant.

COPIES TO/ 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.

116th Cdn. Bn.

C.O.

Asst. Adjt.

S 1/c

Q.M.

A.B.C.D. Coys.

Scout Officer.

T.O.

H.O.

Signal Officer.

Rear H.Q.

R.S.M.

File.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 132

by

Lieut. Colonel B. McLennan, D. S. O.  
Cdg. 42nd. Battalion,  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

JULY 6TH, 1917.

1. INTENTION. There will be an inter-company relief of the night 6/7th inst.
2. POSITION "C" Coy. will relieve "D" Coy. on the right sub-section.  
"A" Coy., will relieve "B" Coy., on the left sub-section.  
Coys. being relieved will take over Support and Reserve positions held by relieving companies
3. TIME. Time of relief will be arranged between the Companies concerned, but must not take place before dark.
4. ORDER OF RELIEF 2 Platoons of "C" Coy. to relieve Outpost Line will move in first.  
2 Platoons of "A" Coy. to relieve Outpost Line next.  
Balance of Companies in accordance with arrangements between company commanders.
5. ROUTE. Relieving Companies will move up by way of BEAVER Trench, which will be for their exclusive use until they are all in.
6. ADVANCE PARTIES. Small advance parties as per arrangements with Company Commanders.
7. RATIONS. "A" and "C" Coys. will detail 15 men each to be left behind for carrying rations.  
"B" and "D" will send down their stores to ration dump, and will provide their own parties when relief is complete.
8. WATER "B" and "D" Coys. will fill water tins and leave them ready for the incoming Companies.  
Water for "B" and "D" will come up with the rations.
9. REPORTS. Companies will report completion of relief by telephone using the message "Rations received at"

R. L. E. EWING, M. C.

Major/Adjutant.

7th C.I. Bde.  
C.O.  
O. C. A B C D Coys.  
File.

By

Lieut. Colonel B. McLennan, D.S.O.  
 Commanding - 42nd. Canadian Bn.  
 Royal Highlanders of Canada.

10

Ref. Map. Sheet 36c. S. W. 1. SUNDAY JULY 8TH, 1917.

Sheet 36. b.

1. INFORMATION.

The Brigade will be relieved in the Line by the 8th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the nights July 9/10th and 10/11th, and will move to the CHATEAU DE LA HAIE Area,

2. INTENTION.

The 42nd. Battalion will be relieved in the centre sub-section by the 2nd. C.M.R. Battalion on the night 10/11th and move to SOUAVE VALLEY Area where they will bivouac.

3. ORDER OF RELIEF.

Platoons will move off independently under Coy. arrangements on completion of relief.

4. SIGNALS

The relief of Signals will be under arrangements of the Signalling Officers concerned, but Signallers will remain at their 'phones until Coys. are relieved, and go out with their companies.

5. TRENCH MORTARS

Section of 7th T.M. Battery in our area will be relieved under arrangements between Officers concerned, the relief to be reported to Battalion H.Q. on completion.

6. GUIDES.

(a) 1 Guide per platoon will report to Lieut. Biggar at junction of Victoria Road and Halifax Trench at 6.30pm. on the night 9/10th, and will proceed under him to Transport Lines. Lieut. Biggar and party will report to 8th Cdn. Inf. Bde. H. Q. Rugby Dump on the BETHUNE ARRAS Rd. at 8.19. b. 5. 2. at 4 pm. on the afternoon of the 10th

(b) An additional guide per platoon, 2 from H. Q. and 1 from 7th T.M. Battery, will report at the junction of Victoria Road and Halifax Trench at 11 pm. on the night 10/11th and wait arrival of Lieut. Biggar with incoming Battalion.

7. RECEIPTS.

Receipts for Trench Stores and Sanitary condition of Trenches and area will be obtained from incoming Bn., and sent to Orderly Room by noon on the 11th.

8. TRANSPORT.

Litters will report at Bn. Ration Dump junction of Victoria Rd. & Halifax Trench at 1 a.m. Officers kits, Lewis Guns, etc., will be sent there prior to that, and turned over to Sergt. Proven who will be in charge of Dump. One batman per Coy., will remain with Officers Baggage at Dump.

9. BIVOUAC AREA.

Guides who proceed out with Lieut. Biggar will act as Guides for their respective platoons to the BIVOUAC AREA in SOUAVE VALLEY.

Kitchens will report to area and hot tea will be ready for companies when they reach Bivouac Area.

10. ROUTINE

JULY 11th. Breakfast .... Under Company arrangements.

Dinner..... at 1.30 pm.

11. REPORTS.

Relief will be reported by telephone using the code words "Your R. E. 101 received at, ....." Should telephone service be disconnected a runner will be sent to Bn. H. Q. to report relief complete.

7th T.M. Battery will report relief by runner to Bn. H. Q.

11. JULY 11th, 1917.

1. INTENTION

The Batta. will move from SOUAVE VALLEY Area to CHATEAU DE LA HAIE Area. Head of column to pass HOSPITAL CORNER CARENCY - X. 17. c. O. 5 1/2 at 3.50 p.m.

R. L. E. EWING, M. C.  
 Major/Adjutant.

7th C.I. Bde. 2nd. C.M.R.  
 7th T.M. Btty. C.O.  
 O. C. A. B. C. D. Coys. Transport Officer  
 B. S. M. File.



by  
Lieut. Col. B. McClellan, D.S.O.,  
Commanding, 43rd Battalion,  
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

11

Ref: Ops. (GARENCY. 1/10,000  
(VDMX 1/10,000

July 18th, 1917.

1. INFORMATION. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve 8th Cdn. Inf. Bde. in the Support Area in Divisional Support on 13th and 16th Insts.
2. INTENTION. The Battalion less 1 Company ("B" Coy) will move from Vancouver Camp, Chateau de la Haie on the 19th Inst., and will relieve 116th Cdn. Bn. in COXOX CAMP, adjoining Berthouval road.
3. ADVANCE PARTIES. As already detailed, an advance party consisting of 1 Officer (Lieut. MacFall) and 3 N.C.Os and 10 O.R. from "A" "C" & "D" Coys., and 1 NCO and 5 O.R. from Sq. will proceed to COXOX CAMP on the 18th Inst., to take over camp and be responsible for same, in addition to which they will arrange allotment of billets, and the leading of Headquarters and Coys., thereto.
4. PARADE. Battalion will parade at 4 p.m. July 18th, in mass on Battalion Parade Ground, and will march off in the following order:-  
Headquarters & "A" Coy.  
"C" Company.  
"D" " "  
300 yards distance will be maintained between Coys., Pipers will report to and march with, their companies.  
Head of column must not pass Hospital Corner prior to 4.50 p.m.  
Heavy Marching Order. Steel helmet to be attached to pack.
5. DRESS. Officers Bed rolls, Mess Boxes, Company Stores, Instructional Grenades, etc., will be piled at ration dump beside Orderly Room ready at 4.15 p.m.
6. OFFICERS BED ROLLS, ETC. Lewis Guns will be piled at Ration Dump, beside Orderly Room ready for limbers at 3.15 p.m. Two Lewis Gunners per company will accompany limbers and act as guard over same when they reach camp.
7. LEWIS GUNS. Teams for "A" "C" & "D" Coys., kitchens will report at 3.15 p.m.
8. KITCHENS. Officers chargers will report at 3.30 p.m.
9. OFFICERS CHARGERS. Huts will be clear of men and ready for inspection by 3.45 p.m. 19th. Inst.
10. INSPECTION OF BILLETS. Rear Party to consist of 1 Senior N.C.O. and 3 O.R. from Sq. & 2 O.R. per Coy., will report to the Orderly Officer who will be responsible for the camp until same is taken over by the incoming Battalion.
11. REAR PARTY. Brigade H.Q. will close at 6 p.m. 19th Inst., at Chateau de la Haie, and open at the same hour at S. 19. b. 5. 2. Bethune-Apres Road.
12. BRIGADE H.Q.

- |    |                |       |                 |                    |
|----|----------------|-------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1. | 7th C.I. Bde.  | 3.    | S.O. "B" Coy.   | R.L.H. EWING, H.Q. |
| 2. | 116th Cdn. Bn. | 4.    | S.O. "D" " "    | Major / Adjnt.     |
| 3. | S.O.           | 10.   | Signal Officer. |                    |
| 4. | S 1/c.         | 11.   | Scout Officer.  |                    |
| 5. | Adjutant       | 12.   | H.Q.            |                    |
| 6. | O.C. "A" Coy.  | 13.   | H.Q.            |                    |
| 7. | O.C. "B" " "   | 14.   | File.           |                    |
|    |                | 15/18 | War Diary.      |                    |

by  
Major S. C. Horsworthy, D. S. O.  
Commanding - 42nd Battalion,  
Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref. map 36b. 1/40,000.

JULY 24th 1945.

1. INFORMATION.

- a. The Brigade will move to the ALLOUAGNE-LAPUGNOY LOZINGHEM Training Area.
- b. Moves will take place in accordance with the attached appendices.
- c. On the march intervals of at least 300 yards will be maintained between companies and 500 yards between Battalions.

The following halts will be observed:-

From 50 to 60 minutes after each clock hour

Other halts are given in appendices.

No halts will be made in villages.

- d. (i) Brigade Headquarters will close at 12 noon 25th July at S. 19. b. 4. 2. and open on same day at ALLOUAGNE on arrival.

(ii) The Brigade Major and Staff Captain "A" and "B" will be at VERREEL on the night of 25/26th July.

- e. Camp and Billotting areas will be clean, free of men, and ready for inspection three quarters of an hour before the time named to march off. O. C's Units will be responsible for their clean and sanitary condition.

f. Pipe Band. Pipes will report to their Companies.

- g. Stragglers. 1 H. C. O. will be detailed to march in rear of the Battalion who will be responsible for collecting stragglers, should there be any. On completion of the march these will be paraded before the B. O. and list of names furnished to the Orderly Room the same evening.

2. INTENTION.

The Battalion will move from CONVOY CAMP on the 25th inst., to LOZINGHEM Area staging at GAUCHIN-LEVAL on the night 25/26th inst, and move to LOZINGHEM on the 26th.

FIRST DAY - JULY 25th3. PARADE.

The Battalion will fall in on the parade ground in mass ready to move off at 10.00 a.m.

4. BRIGADE STARTING POINT AND TIME.

The Battalion will pass starting point Cross Roads VILLERS AU BOIS - X. 19. b. O. 2. at 11.00 a.m.

5. ROUTE.

Via tracks to VILLERS AU BOIS - GRAND SERVINS.

6. HALTS.

In addition to halts laid down there will be a halt from 11.50 a.m. to 12.30 p.m.

Will be piled opposite Orderly Room ready for loading by 8.45 a.m.

7. OFFICERS BED ROLLS, ORDERLY ROOM & MESS BOXES.8. KITCHENS.

Teams will report for kitchens at 9.30 a.m. Hot tea will be served during the halt at 11.50 a.m.

9. TRANSPORT.

Transport will move in rear of Battalion and will be parked at X. 19. d. 10.95 junction of cross country track and road at VILLERS AU BOIS, ready to move off at 10.40 a.m.

continued.

Sheet 2.

SECOND DAY - JULY 26th.

1. PARADE. The Battalion will fall in/column of route <sup>in</sup> head of column opposite a point to be arranged ready to move off at 7.15 a.m.
2. BRIGADE STARTING POINT AND TIME. The Battalion will pass starting point at P. 17.b.5.1 Cross Roads at 8.35 a.m.
3. ROUTE. Via. P. 10.b. HOUBAIN - DEWAY.
4. HALTS. In addition to halts laid down there will be a halt from 9.30 a.m. to 10.00 a.m.
5. OFFICERS BED ROOM & MESS BOXES. Will be piled opposite orderly room ready for ROLLS, ORDERLY leading by 6.45 a.m.
6. KITCHENS. Teams will report for kitchens at 6.45 a.m.
7. TRANSPORT. Transport will move in rear of Battalion and will be parked at point to be arranged by Transport Officer ready to move off at 7.05 a.m.

R.L.H. SMITH, M.C.  
Major/Adjutant.

- |             |                     |                           |
|-------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| Copy No. 1. | 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.  | 8. O.C. C Coy.            |
| 2.          | Camp Commandant.    | 9. O.C. B "               |
| 3.          | Officer Commanding. | 10. Bn. Sig. Officer.     |
| 4.          | 2 i/c.              | 11. Lewis Gun Officer.    |
| 5.          | Adjutant.           | 12. Quartermaster.        |
| 6.          | O.C. A Coy.         | 13. Transport Officer.    |
| 7.          | O.C. B. "           | 14. Medical Officer.      |
|             |                     | 15. D.S.M.                |
|             |                     | 16. 17. & 20 - War Diary. |

APPENDIX (1) TO 42ND BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO. 135

---

Date.	Unit.	From.	To.	Starting Point	Pass Starting Point at-	Route.	Route: REMARKS
<u>JULY 25th</u>	R. C. R.	VICTORIA Area and Depots in S. 10 and S. 16.	COUICHY	Cross Roads VILLERS AU BOIS N. 19. b. O. 2.	12 noon.	Via tracks to VILLERS AU BOIS - GRAND SERVINS.	
	P. P. C. L. L.	HALIFAX Area	VERDREL	do.	1. 10 p.m.	do.	
	42nd Batta.	COMOX CAMP.	GAUCHIN-LEVAL.	do.	11.00 a.m.	do.	Halt. 11.50 a.m. - 12.20 p.m.
	49th Batta.	QUEBEC Area.	OLHAIN and FRESHCOURT.	do.	12.30 p.m.	do.	
	7th Cdn. T. H. Bty.	N. 23. a. S. 4.	VERDREL.	do.	10.45 a.m.	do.	

APPENDIX (11) TO 42ND BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO. 135.

---

DEBate.	Unit.	From.	TO.	Starting Point	Pass Starting point at-	Route	Remarks.
<u>JULY 26th 17.</u>							
	R. C. R.	COMBIGHY	LAPUGNOY	Q. 5. d. 1. 2. (Railroad Crossing)	6. 30 a.m.	HERSIN-BARLIN- BRUAY.	Halt. 8. 30 a.m.- 9. 00 a.m.
	P. F. C. L. I.	VERDREL.	do	Q. 14. b. 3. 6. (Cross-roads)	7. 15 a.m.	DOIS D'OLHAIN BARLIN- BRUAY.	do.
	12nd Batta.	GAUCHIN- LEGAL.	LOZINGHEN	P. 17. b. 5. 1. (Cross-roads)	8. 35 a.m.	P. 10. b. HOUDAIN- BRUAY.	Halt. 9. 30 a.m.- 10. 00 a.m.
	49th Batta.	OLHAIN and FRESNICOURT	ALLOUGHNE.	do,	8. 15 a.m.	do,	do.
	7th C. T. M. B.	VERDREL	do.	Q. 14. b. 2. 6. (Cross-roads)	7. 05 a.m.	DOIS D'OLHAIN BARLIN BRUAY.	Halt. 8. 30 a.m. 9. 00 a.m. To follow R. C. R.

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR DIARY

-----00-----

— OF —

48<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION — 3<sup>rd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM 1<sup>st</sup> August TO 31<sup>st</sup> August 1917.

-----00-----

VOLUME 23

with appendix A

BOIS RASE

TRENCHES CORRECTED TO 20-7-17

Sketch Showing  
Distribution of

42 R.H.C.

Aug 30/17

Scale 1:6000



MESSAGE PAD.

ALL PLACES REFERRED TO SHOULD BE MARKED ON THE MAP.

- Company) (Map reference or  
1. My Platoon) is at ..... mark on map.  
(and am consolidating.  
(and have consolidated.
2. I am held up at ..... by M.G. at .....  
by wire at .....  
by strongly occupied trench  
at .....
3. I need Ammunition }  
Bombs }  
Rifle Grenades } Scratch out what is not required.  
Water }  
Rations }  
Very Lights }  
Stokes Shells }
4. Counter-attack forming up at .....
5. I am in touch with ..... on my Right at .....  
on my Left at .....
6. I am not in touch on my Right.  
" " " " " " Left.
7. Troops on my Right are at .....  
" " " " " " Left " " .....
8. I am being shelled from .....
9. I am under rifle fire from .....  
" " " M.G. " " .....
10. Hostile battery active at .....  
" " M.G. active at .....
11. I have sent forward patrols to .....
12. I have established advanced posts at .....
13. The enemy holds the line .....
14. .... is unoccupied by the enemy.  
..... is occupied by the enemy.
15. I estimate my present strength at .....
- Time ..... Name .....  
Date ..... Platoon .....  
Company .....  
Battalion .....

**NOTE:** Strike out anything not applicable.



WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Cdn. Division,

From 1st to 31st August, 1917.

Volume 23.

Diary Text

6 Pages.

Appendix A.

Operation Order No. 136 dated the 19th Aug. Instructions for relief of 5th C.I.B. by 7th C.I.B. on August 21st and 22nd, 42nd to move per march table attached.

Operation Order No. 137 dated the 21st Aug. 42nd Bn. to be placed at the disposal of 8th C.I.B. Instructions for the taking of positions occupied by 4th C.M.R. on night 21st/22nd August.

Operation Order No. 138 dated the 24th August. Instructions for relief of 42nd Cdn. Bn. by 14th Durham Light Infantry and the 1st West Yorks Battalion on the night 24th and 25th Aug.

Operation Order No. 139 dated the 16th August. Instructions for relief of 49th Bn. by 42nd Bn. on night 27th and 28th.



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in P. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1917 AUGUST	1st.		The Battalion in Rest Billets at LOZINGHEM Lieuts. J. R. MacLeod and R. F. Studd returned from Paris Leave Major R. L. H. Eding, MC. proceeded to 1st Conference of Artillery and Infantry held at the Artillery School, AIRE.	x/1
"	2nd.		Lieuts. R. McIntyre and J. A. Aldridge having come from the 20th Reserve Battalion were taken on the strength of the Battalion, both having previously been N.C.O.'s in the Battalion. Through the courtesy of the Municipal Authorities the use of two School Rooms at either end of the village was granted to the Battalion, and were opened as reading and writing rooms for the men. This act was very much appreciated.	x/1
"	3rd.		Capt. E. R. Pease, DSO. having returned from leave was taken on the strength of the Battalion.	x/1
"	4th.		A poll was opened to receive ballots of Officers, N.C.O.'s and men entitled to vote for the return of Military Members for the Alberta Legislature.	x/1
"	5th		Church Parade was held in the morning, and the afternoon was devoted to Sports.	
"			Major R. L. H. Eding, MC. returned from Artillery Conference at AIRE.	x/1
"	7th.		A very interesting dinner was given by Brig. Gen Dyer, DSO, G.O.C., 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. to	





## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2110.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.**

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1917				
AUGUST	19th.	Cont.	<p>of the ranges which were allotted to us for two days in the week, great interest being taken in the shooting. This included eliminations for Corps Marketry shoot to be held in September, at which we won a place for Company Cup and Rifle Grenade Team.</p> <p>Night marches with Gas Helmets were held, and arrangements made for three days manoeuvres which were to have commenced on the 13th, but which were cancelled at the last minute. A practice alarm was sounded one evening, and the Battalion assembled from surrounding playing fields etc., and first line of Transport, and everything made ready for the Battalion to move off in short order.</p>	
AUGUST	19th		<p>Lieut. H. Huser, WM. was admitted to hospital with a sprained knee.</p> <p>The Battalion marched to Bracquemont and took over the billets vacated by the 7th Cdo. Inf. Bn.</p> <p>Lieut. H. L. Hoyle and O.R. proceeding on English leave remained behind as rear party and proceeded on leave on the 20th.</p>	2/12
AUGUST	21st.		<p>Major S. C. Norworthy, DSO, MC. was appointed temporarily to command the 7th Bde. Training Battalion, and with Capt. E. R. Pegg, DSO, Lieut. J. S. MacKenzie, Other Ranks, and the Battn. Pipe Band, proceeded to Perffy.</p>	2/12
			<p>H. S. S., LIND, E.C. Using the War Diaries 2110 and 2111 the Form C. 2110</p>	

## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
1917 AUGUST	21st.	Cont.	In accordance with orders received from the 3rd. Canadian Division the Battalion was placed at the disposal of the G.O.C. 8th Cdn. Inf. Bde., and on the night 21/22nd. moved from billets in BRACQUEMONT to take over area in LOOS and neighbourhood from the 4th C.M.R. Battalion. There was no incident of note during this tour.	
"	24th.		On the night 24/25th August, the Battalion was relieved by two Battalions of the 6th Imperial Division, namely, 14th Durham Light Infantry Battalion and 1st Battalion West Yorks, and moved back by way of LES BREBIS to POSSE 10 (PETIT SAINS) coming under the order of the 7th Cdn. Inf. Brigade after leaving LES BREBIS.	2/12
"	25th		The Battalion reached Posse 10 on the morning of 25th.	2/12
"	26th		Battalion Church Parade was held in the morning. Orders were received for the Battalion to relieve the 49th Battalion (E.R.) in Brigade Support on the night 27th/28th  The C.O. and Company Officers proceeded up to look over the line. Major C. B. Topp returned from English leave.	2/12
"	27th/28th		The Battalion moved from Base 10 area R.S.d. Divisional Reserve and relieved the 49th Battalion (E.R.) in Brigade Support in CITE ST PIERRE and Posse 12 de Lens. The march was	





SECRET

"A"

~~OPERATION ORDER NO. 130~~

Copy No. 21

by  
Lieut. Col. B. McLaughlin, D.S.O.  
Commanding - 42nd Battalion,  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

AUGUST, 16th, 1917.

1. INFORMATION. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the night 21/22nd August 1917.
2. INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion will move from LOZINGHEM to BRAQUEMONT in accordance with attached appendixes.
3. PARADE. The Battalion will fall in on the main road in column of route, head of column opposite "B" Coys., billets at 9.30 a.m. as per warning order.
4. TRANSPORT. In accordance with arrangements in the warning order.
5. LOAF IN.T. Dinner. During the halt from 1.30 to 12.30 p.m. a hot meal will be served.
6. BILLETING PARTY. Billeting party will proceed in advance of the Battalion under Capt. Macdougall.
7. REAR PARTY. Lieut. J. Doyle and English leave party will remain in LOZINGHEM and act as rear party.
8. BRIGADE HEADQUARTERS. Brigade headquarters will close at ALLOUAGHE 6.30 a.m. 19th August and open at BULLY GREY (Rear Hq. 5th Canadian Inf. Bde) on arrival. Advance Brigade headquarters will open at Hill, a. G. I. at 9 p.m. 31st August.

R. L. H. BEING, M.C.

Major/Adjt.

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. 7th Can. Inf. Bde. | 10. L.G.O.             |
| 2. C.O.               | 11. Scout Off.         |
| 3. A i/c.             | 12. Signal Officer.    |
| 4. Adjutant.          | 13. Quartermaster.     |
| 5. O.C. A. Coy.       | 14. Transport Officer. |
| 6. O.C. B "           | 15. H.O.               |
| 7. O.C. C "           | 16. B.S.H.             |
| 8. O.C. D "           | 17. Rear O.R.          |
| 9. Bombing Officer.   | 18. Pilo.              |
|                       | 19. 20. 31. War Diary. |

APPENDIX TO 7TH CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE OPERATION ORDER #104

DATE	UNIT	FROM	TO	To Pass Starting Point D. 26. c. 7. l. at	REMARKS
Sunday 19th Aug.	R. C. R.	L'EPUGNOY	NOEUX LES MINES	9.30 a.m.	} Halts. From 50 to 60 minutes after the hour From 11.30 a.m. - 12.30 p.m.
	P.P.C.L.I.	do.	HERSIN	10.00 "	
	42nd. Bn. (R.H.C.)	LOZINGHEM	BRACQUEMONT	10.30 "	
	49th Bn. (Z.R.)	ALLOUAGNE	BARLIN	10.40 "	
Monday 20th Aug.	R. C. R.	NOEUX LES MINES	LES BREBIS		} - Time of moving off will be notified later.
	P.P.C.L.I.	HERSIN	do		
	42nd. Bn.	Remain at BRACQUEMONT -----			
	49th Bn.	BARLIN	LES BREBIS		

Units.

19.8.17

During the march intervals of 200 yards will be maintained between Companies and 500 yards between

A.O.Meredith, Major  
Brigade Major  
7th Cdn. Infantry Bde.

## APPENDIX TO 7TH CANADIAN INFANTRY BRIGADE OPERATION ORDER # 104

DATE	UNIT	FROM	TO	RELIEVE	REMARKS
Tuesday 21st. Aug.	R. C. R.	LES BREBIS	Front Line and Support Trenches	22nd. and 25th Cdn. Battalions	
	P.P.C.L.I.	do.	(Brigade Reserve)	24th Canadian Batta.	
	42nd. Bn. (R. H. C.)	BRACHEMONT	LES BREBIS (Divisional Reserve)	_____	( Time of moving off ( will be notified later.
	49th Bn. (E. R.)	LES BREBIS	Brigade Support	26th Canadian Batta.	

13.8.17

A.O. Horsmith, Major  
Brigade Major  
7th Canadian Inf. Brigade.

By

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D. G. O.  
 Command, 4th Battalion, R. I. C.  
 8th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

22

Ref. MAP. 36. G. N. W. Ed. G. a.

AUGUST, 1st, 1917.

- 1. INFORMATION.** In accordance with orders received from the 3rd Cdn. Division, the 4th Cdn. Inf. Battalion of the 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde., will be placed at the disposal of the G. O. C. 8th Cdn. Inf. Brigade until further orders.
- 2. INTENTION.** The Battalion will move from billets in BRACQUEMONT and will take over positions occupied by 4th C. I. R. Bn., on the night 31/32nd Aug. 1917.
- 3. TIME OF START & ORDER OF MARCH.** The Battalion will parade at 7 p.m. in column of route, head of column opposite the last house on the main ARRAS-BETHUNE Road in the following order. Intervals of 30 yards between platoons and 100 yards between companies will be maintained.
- Headquarters.  
 "B" Company  
 "C" " "  
 "D" " "  
 "A" " "
- 4. REVERSE.**
- "B" Coy., will take over position in LOOS occupied by "B" Coy., 4th C. I. R. with Coy. Hq. at G. 36. a. 2. 2.
- "C" Coy., will take over position in GUL Trench occupied by "C" Coy., of the 4th C. I. R. with Coy. Hq. at G. 36. a. 9. 9.
- "D" Coy., will take over position in Village Line occupied by "D" Coy., 4th C. I. R. with Coy. Hq. at G. 36. b. 6. 2
- "A" Coy., will take over position occupied by "A" Coy., 4th C. I. R. with Coy. Hq. at G. 36. d. 6. 3.
- 5. TRANSPORT.** Transport will proceed under arrangements of the Transport Officer. A guide from the 3rd Cdn. Bn. will accompany same.
- 6. LOUIS GUNS.** Louis Gun Limbers will accompany and will move in centre of their respective Coys., and be unloaded at LMS BREBIS.
- 7. GUIDES.** 1 Guide per platoon and 1 for Hq. will meet the Battalion at the Church LMS BREBIS.
- 8. BATTALION HQ.** Battalion Hq. will be at junction of CHALK PIT ALLEY and MOETH Trench H. 48. c. 3. 6.
- 9. BRIGADE HQ.** Brigade Hq. will be at G. 36. b. 1. 6.
- 10. REPORTS.** Coys., will report completion of move to Bn. Hq. by wire using the code message "E. 137 received at...." in addition to which runners will be sent to Bn. Hq. confirming this message and to await orders.

R. L. H. Ewing, D. G. O.  
 Major/Adjutant.

1. 8th Cdn. Inf. Bde.  
 2. 4th C. I. R. Bn.  
 3. G. O. C.  
 4. 2 i/c.  
 5. Adjt.  
 6. G. O. C. B  
 7. G. O. C. C  
 8. G. O. C. C  
 9. G. O. C. D

10. Bombing Off.  
 11. Louis Gun Off.  
 12. Scout Officer.  
 13. Signal Officer.  
 14. Quartermaster.  
 15. Transport Officer.  
 16. H. O.  
 17. B. S. M.  
 18. Rear O. R.  
 19. File.  
 20. 41. 3 War Diary.



by  
Lieut. Col. B. McLaughlin, D.S.O.  
Comdr. 49th Battalion.  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref. and LRHS Ed. No.  
26. B. 1/40.300

SUNDAY, AUGUST 30th 1917

**1. INFORMATION.** On the night 27/28th Aug., the 1st Bn. R.I.C. from FOSSE 10, R.S.I. (Divisional Reserve) will relieve the 10th Bn. R.R. in Brigade Support. On completion of reliever the 10th Bn. R.R. will move to FOSSE 10, R.S.I. (Div. Reserve).

**1.1. TRENCH.** The Battalion will relieve 49th Cdn. Bn. R.R. in Brigade Support on the night 27/28th Aug. 17.

**3. TIME OF START AND ORDER OF MARCH.**

Headquarters	will	pass	start	at	7.45	p.m.
"A" Company	"	"	"	"	"	8.00
"B" "	"	"	"	"	"	8.15
"C" "	"	"	"	"	"	8.30
"D" "	"	"	"	"	"	8.45

An interval of 50 yards will be maintained between platoons. Coy. Lewis' uncovers all a row at the head of their companies.

**4. BATTALION STARTING OF MARCH.**

T. Junction of MIRA - BETHUNE and road to BULLY GRENNAY.

**5. ROUTINE**

"A" Coy. will take over position occupied by " " Coy., 10th Bn. R.R. in ARTAL TRENCH Area.  
"B" Coy. will take over position occupied by "B. Co. 10th Cdn. Bn. S.W. Corner, H.I.B.  
"C" Company will take over position occupied by "D" Coy., 10th Cdn. Bn. in H.E. Corner, H.I.B.  
"D" Coy. will take over position occupied by "C" Coy., 10th Cdn. Bn. in HENLEY TRENCH Area.

Immediately on relief being completed companies will detail parties to proceed to ration dump for Company stores, Mess Boxes, etc.

**6. GUIDES.**

The 49th Cdn. Bn. will furnish 1 guide per platoon to meet the Battalion at the junction of FOSSE 11 Road and "E" route.

**7. ADVANCE PARTIES.**

1 Officer per company and 1 O.R. per platoon, and Pioneer Sergt. and 4 O.R. from Hq. and 1 O.R. from I.C. Staff will leave for the line at 1 p.m. Lieut. Aldridge and 1 O.R. will report to Bde. Hq. at 11.00 a.m.

Advance parties will be responsible for taking over trench stores, etc., and will detail 1 guide per platoon to accompany guide from 49th Bn. Hq. party will arrange for 2 guides at Battalion ration dump.

**8. LEWIS GUNS.**

Lieut. McEntyre and L.C. Sergt. will be in charge of unloading and distribution of Lewis Guns at junction of FOSSE 11 Road and "E" route.

Lewis Gun limbers will report at this point at 9.30 p.m. 2 O.R. per crew will accompany limbers. The remainder of Lewis Gun crews will march at head of their companies and take up their guns at the Dump and proceed in with their companies.

**9. SIGNALS.**

The Signal Section will proceed in advance of the Bn., and reliever will be arranged with Signalling Officer 49th Cdn. Bn.

**10. RATIONS.**

**11. TANKS.**

Will be carried in on the men.  
The 49th Cdn. Bn. will leave 80 petrol tins in the line. The Q.M. of the Battalion will deliver 80 tins to the Q.M. of the 49th Cdn. Bn.

**12. OFFICERS KITS MESS BOXES, etc.**

Which are to be left at Transport Line will be piled at Company kitchens by 1 p.m. Officers kits must be properly marked.

Officers trench kits, Mess Boxes, etc., will be piled at Coy. kitchens and "Hq" at Orderly Room at 7.30 p.m. Teams will call for kitchens at 8.30 p.m.

**13. KITCHENS.**

**14. BATTALION**

HEADQUARTERS will be at H.I.B. 45.55.

P.T.O.

15. REPORTS.

Companies will report completion of relief to Bn. Hq. by wire using the code message "E. 130 received at....." in addition to which runners will be sent to Bn. Hq. confirming this message, and to admit orders.

R. L. H. EWING. H. C.

Major/Adjt.

Copies to

1. 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde.
2. 48th Cdn. Bn.
3. C. O.
4. Adjutant.
5. C. C. A. Coy
6. C. C. B. Coy
7. C. C. C "
8. C. C. D "
9. Quartermaster.
10. Transport Officer
11. Signal Officer.
12. Scout Officer.
13. Bombing Officer.
14. Lewis Gun Officer.
15. Medical Officer.
16. B. C. H.
17. File.
- 18/21 War Diary.

CONFIDENTIAL

WAR LIBRARY

-----00-----

-: OF :-

*42<sup>nd</sup>*

CANADIAN BATTALION.

*- 2<sup>nd</sup>*

CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM *1<sup>st</sup>* September TO *30<sup>th</sup>* September 1917

-----00-----

VOLUME *24*

*with appendix A'*



WAR DIARY

42nd Cdn. Battalion 2nd Canadian Divan.

from 1st to 30th September, 1917.

Volume 24.

Diary Text

4 Pages.

Appendix A.

O.O. No. 140 dated the 1st September, instructions for relief of 42nd Bn. by 2nd Battalion on the 4th and 5th September.

O.O. No. 142 dated the 6th September, Instructions re move of 42nd Battalion from GOUAY SERVICE to Bois Des Alleux on the 7th.

O.O. No. 143 dated the 16th September, Instructions re the relief of 8th and 9th C.I.B. by 7th C.I.B. on night 17th/18th and 19th.

O.O. No. 144 dated the 21st September, Instructions re inter-Co relief on night 21st and 22nd.

Schedule to O.O. 144 working parties on completion of Inter-Co relief.

O.O. No. 145 dated the 23rd September, Instructions for relief of 42nd Bn. by 49th Bn. on the 23rd and 24th.

O.O. No. 146 dated the 28th September, Inter-Bde. relief on the night 29th and 30th, 42nd will relieve the 49th.

A  
WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118. 24

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title Pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~CONFIDENTIAL~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
<p style="font-size: 1.5em; font-family: cursive;">Confidential Original</p> <p style="text-align: center;">WAR DIARY for the month of SEPTEMBER 1917.  42ND CANADIAN BATTALION, ROYAL HIGHLANDERS OF CANADA.</p> <hr style="border: 1px solid black;"/>				

# WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

## ~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
<u>September 1st, 1917.</u>			The Battalion still in close support CITE ST PIERRE de LENS, garrisoning, furnishing working parties nightly for work on new support line, communication trenches, etc. The enemy shelling by night was very active. The 13th Battalion moved into CITE ST PIERRE another of the rare occasions that the sister Battalions have met in the forward area. Lieut. J. R. Aldridge, Battalion Bombing Officer was sent out very sick.	
<u>September 4/5th, 17</u>			<u>CASUALTIES.</u> Wounded. <u>350.R.</u> Killed <u>3.</u> O.R. Died of Wounds <u>1.O.R.</u> On the night of 4/5th the Battalion was relieved by the 2nd Canadian Battalion and moved to FOSSE 10 SANS EN GOHELLE. The relief was completed early and the Battalion just clear of the area when the enemy put on a heavy shoot of H.E. Shrapnel and gas. Two limbers with the Lewis Guns, had their drivers, Lewis Gunners and two horses wounded. Lieut. DeRossiter the Transport Officer dismounted from his horse and drove out one limber and Pte. Chas. White (419145) although wounded, pluckily brought out the other.	
<u>September 5th 1917.</u>			The Battalion moved from FOSSE 10, SAINS EN GOHELLE to GOUY SERVINS where two nights were spent in billets.	
<u>September 7th 1917.</u>			The Battalion moved from billets GOUY SERVINS to OTTAWA CAMP, BOIS des ALLEUX, the Camp we occupied during the short periods out in the fall and winter of 1916.	
<u>September 12th 17.</u>			Lieut. V. E. Hobart and Lieut. G. H. Fletcher reported and were taken on strength. Lieut. Trout and our Scout Section under Divisional arrangements laid out the tape trenches for the 8th and 9th Brigades.	
<u>September 14th 17.</u>			The Battalion was paraded under Cby., arrangements to Brigade Gas School for inspection of respirators and P. H. Helmets. An interesting lecture to improve the liaison between the Air Service and the Infantry was given on the "AIR SERVICE" by Lieut. Col. Cargew 16th Squadron, R. F. C. and on the 14th a number of Officers and N. C. Os went to the aerodrome for a demonstration. During our stay at OTTAWA CAMP vigorous training was carried on. Some working parties were furnished to the forward area. The men being taken by Corps Light Railway to VIMY	
<u>September 17th./18th.</u>			The Battalion moved from OTTAWA CAMP, BOIS des ALLEUX by Light Railway and detrained on the east side LENS-ARRAS ROAD where they had tea and moved over VIMY RIDGE at 8.15 relieving the 5th C.M.R. and 1 Company 4th C.M.R. in the line opposite MERICOURT, occupying TOLEDO TRENCH TEDDIE GERARD TRENCH, NEW BRUNSWICK and CANADA TRENCH, R. C. R. on the right flank, 31st Canadian	

continued.



## WAR DIARY

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II. and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

~~TOP SECRET~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<b>SHEET 3.</b>	
			<p>at T. 10.d.5.2. at dusk proceeding to the junction of the MERICOURT and QUARRIES ROADS. From this point the Patrol headed in a westerly direction for the trees on HULL ROAD T. 10.b.8.4. about 600 yards from our trenches. When within a short distance of the trees a noise was heard and some figures were seen approaching from the direction of our lines. The enemy challenged and on receiving no reply they crept forward in formation. Our patrol waited until the Buns were almost on them when on a signal from the Officer they opened fire with the Lewis Gun and Rifles and then rushed the party. Three of the enemy were killed including the N.C.O. in charge whose rank badge was brought in and the remaining three were made prisoners and sent to our lines in charge of two O.R. They proved to be Ptes. Wilhelm Krote, August Mancke, and Walter Trosse of the 11th Coy., 3rd Battalion 54th Regiment. Time 9.20 p.m. The patrol then took up a position near the same place in expectation of the possibility of a further enemy patrol coming out and at 10.35 some figures were observed on the opposite side of the HULL ROAD, but their number could not be distinguished, as there was a heavy ground mist. Our party crept forward to surround and cut off the party, Lieut Cohen and 1 O.R. crossing the Road. A burst of fire was opened by the Lewis Gun and the Patrol rushed the Buns who showed resistance firing with their rifles. Three prisoners were taken including L/Cpl. Franz Todwitz, Pte. Albert Slavsky and Richard Matysek, the latter severely wounded and in addition one other was wounded. Time 10.50 p.m. Patrol returned via MERICOURT ROAD reaching our lines shortly after 11.00 p.m. Enemy were armed with rifles and stick grenades. Two were the Iron Cross, Papers etc., taken from prisoners sent to Brigade with prisoners.</p> <p>The following congratulatory messages received:-</p> <p>"42nd Canadian Battalion</p> <p>Following from Canadian Corps Commander begins aaa. Please convey to Lieut. Cohen and his party my best congratulations on the splendid patrolling which was carried out last night aaa. Sgd. A.W. Currie. Lieut. General "</p> <p>Congratulatory messages also received from the Divisional Commander, Major-Genl. Lipsett, Brig. Genl. Hugh N. Dyer, Comdg. 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. Major. Genl. A.C. Macdormell. C.B.</p>	



APPENDIX AORDER

OPERATION ORDER NO. 140 Copy No. 14...

by  
 Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.  
 Commanding - 48th Battalion,  
 Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref. map LENS Ed. 9. a.

Sheet 5cb 1/40,000

September 1st, 1917.

- 1. INFORMATION.** The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved in the line by the 1st Canadian Infantry Bde. and will move to BOIS DES ALLEUX, staging at SERVINS. On the night 7/8th Sept. Brigade Headquarters will be at MONT ST ELOU.
- 2. INTENTION.** The Battalion will be relieved in the support area by the 2nd Canadian Inf. Bn. on the night 4/5th September and move to FOSSE 10 on completion of relief.
- 3. RELIEF.** On completion of relief, platoons will move off under Company arrangements.  
Signals will go out with their companies.
- 4. GUIDES.** Guides, on the basis of 3 per Company will be at the junction of FOSSE 11 and "B" Route N. 9. S. 85. 48 by 9.15 p.m. on the night 4/5th Sept. under Lieut. Trout as follows:-  
 1 Per platoon and 1 for Coy. Hq.  
 1 Per Bn. Hq. and  
 1 For Bn. Hq. details.  
 "A" Coys. will furnish in addition 1 guide to lead in Lewis Gun crews to relieve A.A. Lewis Guns.
- 5. LEWIS GUNS.** On relief Lewis Guns will be sent to Battalion Dump and handed over to Sergt. Craig who will retain a guard from each company.
- 6. OFFICERS KITS** Will be sent to the ration dump after dusk and  
**MESS BOXES,** a guard posted over same, under company arrangements.  
**DIXIES, Etc.**
- 7. TRANSPORT.** Transport for Lewis Guns etc., will report to Batta Dump at 11.15 p.m.
- 8. MAPS.** Maps and photos of the immediate area will be handed over to the incoming Battalion.
- 9. GUIDES TO**  
**BILLETTS** The Quartermaster will arrange for a party at rear to meet Companies and lead them to their billets at FOSSE 10.
- 10. RECEIPTS.** Will be obtained for all trench stores, sanitary condition of trenches, etc., and sent to Orderly Room by 12 Noon Sept. 6th.
- 11. REPORTS.** Companies will report completion of relief immediately by wire using the code phrase "Your R. 140 received at....." This is to be confirmed by runner to Battalion Hq.
- Copy. No. 1. 7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. R.L.H. EWING, M.C.  
 2. 1st Cdn. Batta. Major/Adjt.  
 3. O.C. "A" Coy.  
 4. O.C. "B" "  
 5. O.C. "C" "  
 6. O.C. "D" "  
 7. M.O.  
 8. Q.M. & T.O.  
 9. File.  
 10. 11. 12. War Diary.

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER No. 141

COPY No. 19

By  
Lieut. Col. B. Slemman, D.S.O.  
Capt., 2nd Battalion R.C.C.  
(5th Royal Highlanders of Canada)

Ref. Map 76 B

Sept. 4th. 1917

1. OPERATION.

1st Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade in billets on 5th inst.

2. INTENTIONS.

The Battalion will move from FOSSÉ LE SAIN-EN-GOHELLE on 5th inst. to GOUAY SERVINS.

3. BRIGADE STARTING POINT.

On main road SAIN-EN-GOHELLE to BOYEFFLES where it crosses the Railway Track R.C.C.S.E., which point will be passed by the Battalion at 1.30 p.m.

4. BATTALION STARTING POINT TIME and ORDER OF MARCH.

The Battalion will fall in in column of route, ready to move off at 1.30 p.m. in the following order:-

- "D" Coy.
- "C" Coy.
- "B" Coy.
- "A" Coy.
- Headquarters.

Head of column on main road SAIN-EN-GOHELLE to BOYEFFLES at point of crossing with MARSH-AN-NOULETTE Road R. C.C.S.E.

Pipers will report to Companies.

5. TRANSPORT.

Transport will be parked ready to move at 1.00 p.m. on Main Road SAIN-EN-GOHELLE to BOYEFFLES at a point to be selected by T.O. between Brigade Starting Point and Battalion Starting Point. It will follow the Battalion.

6. DRESS.

Heavy marching order, without aprons. Steel Helmets will be carried.

7. MARCH DISCIPLINE.

Two hundred yards distance will be maintained between companies. Halts will be made from 5 to 60 minutes after each clock hour.

8. RATIONS.

Unexpended portions of the days rations will be carried.

P.T.O.



9. BAGGAGE, ORDNANCE  
HOOD BOXES, ETC.

(a) Headquarters Officers kits for  
linbers and mess boxes for mess carts will  
will be piled outside Headquarters Officers  
mess by 11.45 a.m.

(b) Company Officers kits for linbers  
and mess boxes for mess carts will be  
piled at respective Company Kitchens by  
12.00 n.m.

(c) Teams will call for Kitchens at  
12.45 p.m.

(d) H.O's Cart will be loaded by  
12.00 noon.

10. INSPECTION OF  
BILLETTS

Billets will be cleared clear of  
men and ready for inspection by 12.15 p.m.

Officers Commanding Units will  
be responsible for the clean condition  
of their billets and area.

R.L.H. Irving, M.C.  
Major / Adjutant

- |                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Lt Cdn Inf. Bde | 10 Bombing Officer     |
| 2. " "             | 11 Lewis Gun Officer   |
| 3. C.C.            | 12 Scout Officer       |
| 4. S I/c           | 13 Signal Officer      |
| 5. Adj't.          | 14 Quartermaster       |
| 6. C.C. A. Coy     | 15 Transport Officer   |
| 7. C.C. B. Coy     | 16 Medical Officer     |
| 8. C.C. C. Coy     | 17 B.S.M.              |
| 9. C.C. D. Coy     | 18 File                |
|                    | 19. 20. 21. War Diary. |

SECRET.

OPERATION ORDER NO 142

Copy No. 17...

by  
Lieut. Colonel B. McLennan D.S.O.  
Cmdg. 42nd. Battalion R.H.C.  
5th. Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Ref. Map 36 B.

September 6th, 1917

- 1 INTENTION. The Battalion will move on the 7th. inst from Billets in Gouay Servins to Ottawa Camp Bois des Alleux
- 2 BRIGADE STARTING POINT. Cross Roads W. 5. c. 5. 5. which will be passed by the Battalion at 4.40 p.m.
- 3 BATTALION STARTING POINT, TIME & ORDER OF MARCH. The Battalion will fall in in mass on the Chateau Barrack Square facing East (Main Gates) ready to move off at 4.25. pm. in the following order.  
Headquarters  
A Company  
B Company  
C Company  
D Company  
Pipers will report to Companies.
- 4 TRANSPORT. Transport will be parked in the rear of the Battalion in Chateau Barrack Square by 4.15 pm. It will follow the Battalion.
- 5 DRESS. Heavy marching order, without aprons. Steel Helmets will be carried.
- 6 March DISCIPLINE. 200 Yards distance will be maintained between Companies.  
Halts will be made 50 to 80 minutes after each clock hour.
- 7 RATIONS. Unexpended portions of the days rations will be carried.
- 8 BAGGAGE, ORDERLY ROOM BOXES ETC. (a) Officers kits for limbers will be piled by 2.50 pm. as follows:-  
Hq. Officers in billets - Outside Hq. Mess.  
Hq Officers in huts. - Outside of huts.  
Company Officers - Outside respective Huts  
(b) Mess boxes will be piled outside respective Officers messes by 2.30 pm.  
(c) Orderly room boxes will be piled on the road in front of Orderly Room by 2.30. pm.  
(d) Kitchens will be ready for teams by 3.30. pm.
- 9 Inspection of Billets. Billets will be cleaned, clear of men and ready for inspection by 3.00 pm.  
Officers in Command of units will be responsible for the clean condition of their billets and area.

R. L. H. Ewing M. C.  
Major & Adjutant.

Copy No 1 7th. C. I. B.

- 2 O. C.  
3 2nd. I/C  
4 Adjt.  
5 O. C. A. Coy.  
6 O. C. B. Coy.  
7 O. C. C. Coy.  
8 O. C. D. Coy.

Copy No. 9. Lewis Gun Officer

10. Scout Officer  
11. Signal Officer  
12. Quartermaster  
13 Transport Officer  
14 Medical Officer  
15 B. S. M.  
16 File

Copy Nos. 17, 18, 19. War Diary.

SECRET

By  
 Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.  
 Commanding 42nd Battalion  
 Royal Highlanders of Canada.

Reference to  
 51 C 1/30,000  
 51 B. N.W. 1/30,000  
 36 C. S.W. 1/30,000

Sept. 16th 1917

## 1. INFORMATION.

The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will relieve the 8th and 9th Canadian Infantry Brigades in the Line on the nights of 17/18th and 18/19th September.

## 2. INTENTION

The Battalion will move from OTTAWA CAMP on the 17th inst, entraining at FRASER CAMP at 5.00 p.m. and detrain at east side of LEIS-ARRAS ROAD (approx Location A.S.d. 2.5. Sheet 51 B near Cross Roads) It will thence move forward and complete reliefs as follows.

- B. Coy on the right will relieve one Company of the 5th C.I.R in front Line
- D. Coy. on the left will relieve one Company of 5th C.I.R in front line.
- C. Coy. will relieve one company of 5th C.I.R. New Brunswick Trench in supports.
- A. Coy. in support will relieve one company 4th C.I.R. and occupy CANADA TRENCH between NEW BRUNSWICK ROAD and MONT FORET ROAD.

Units will not move over VIMY RIDGE before 8.15 p.m.

## 3. ADVANCE PARTIES.

Advance parties will leave Camp between 9.00 and 10.00 a.m. 17th inst and proceed to area to be occupied by their units on completion of relief. No movement overland is permitted East of LEIS-ARRAS RAILROAD in daylight.

Parties will consist of:-

- From each company 1 Officer. 1 Senior N.C.O and 4 O.R.
- Headquarters. 1 Senior N.C.O. & 4 O.R.

## 4. PARADES.

The Battalion will parade on Battalion Parade ground & ready to move off at 4.30 p.m. 17th inst in new facing road, in the following order, from left to right  
 i.e. Right Left

- Headquarters
- B. Coy.
- D. Coy.
- C. Coy.
- A. Coy.

## 5. DRESS

Battle Order.

6. BAGGAGE, ORIENTLY  
FOOT BOXES, Etc.

These will be piled beside the Orderly Room by the following hours.

- Mess Packs. 10.00 a.m.
- Officers Beds 11.00 a.m.
- Mess and Orderly Room
- Boxes-Coy Stairs etc 2.00 p.m.
- Officers Trench Kits. 2.00 p.m.

7 LENS GUNS.

Lens Guns, and discs will be filed outside  
Oratory Room by 2.00 p.m. and will be taken by  
limber as far as point of detachment  
One O.R. from each gun crew will accompany  
the limbers

8 KITCHENS

Kitchens will be ready for teams by 2.00 p.m.  
Kitchens will be moved to detrainning point East  
side of LENS - MRRAS ROAD ( Approx Location  
A 5.d. 2.5 Sheet 51 B ) where hot tea will be  
served on arrival of the Unit.

9 GUIDES

Guides will be supplied by Units being relieved  
as follows.

One Guide for Bn. Headquarters.  
Two Guides per Platoon

Guides will be at THELUS CAVE ( A. 6. c. 7.7.  
Sheet 51 B ) at 7.00 p.m. on the 17th inst.

10 INSPECTION OF  
BILLETTS.

Huts will be cleared of men by 3.15 p.m. and  
cleared ready for inspection by 3.45 p.m. 17th inst.

11 REPORTS.

Completion of reliefs will be reported immediately  
to Battalion Headquarters by Code phrase, " Your  
O.O. 143 received ~~at~~ " which will be confirmed  
by runner.

12 BATTALION  
HEADQUARTERS.

On completion of relief Battalion Headquarters will  
be at T. 16. a. 9.0. Sheet 36 B ( S. W. 4 ) In Quebec Trench.

R.L.H. EWING M.C.  
Major Adjutant.

Copy No	1 to	7th Cdn Inf, Bds	16...	O.V.
	2	8th do	17	T.O.
	3	9th do	18	M.O.
	4	5th C.H.R.	19	B.S.H.
	5	S.O. 4th C.H.R.	20	File.
	6	S.O.	21	} War Diary.
	7	2/A. c.	22	
	8	Adjt.	23	
	9	O.C. A. Coy	24	
	10	O.C. B. Coy		
	11	O.C. C. Coy		
	12	O.C. D. Coy		
n	13	Lewis Gun Officer		
	14	Scout Officer		
	15	Signal Officer		

**SECRET**

OPERATION ORDER NO.144

By

Lt. Col. E. McLennan, DSO,  
Comd. 4th Canadian Battalion  
Royal Highlanders of Canada

COPY NO. \_\_\_\_\_

SEPTEMBER 21st., 1917

1.  
INTENTION

There will be an inter-company relief on night 21st/22nd. instant.

2.  
POSITIONS

A COMPANY will relieve B Coy. on the right sub-section  
C COMPANY will relieve D Coy. on the left sub-section

Companies being relieved will take over Support positions previously held by relieving Companies.

3.  
TIME

Time of relief will be arranged between Coys. concerned, and will be as early as darkness permits.

4.  
ROUTE

A COMPANY will move up by way of TOAST Trench  
C COMPANY overland.

Companies relieved will return overland.

5.  
ADVANCE PARTIES

Small advance parties will be sent as per arrangements between Company Commanders.

6.  
WORKING PARTIES

On completion of relief Working Parties will be immediately despatched as per schedule annexed.

7.  
REPORTS

Companies will report completion of relief by telephone using the code message "Your O.O. 144 received at-----" which will be confirmed by runner.

R. L. H. EWING, M.C.

Major/Adjutant.

Copies to/ Brigade 1  
C.O. 2  
O.C. A Coy 3  
" B " 4  
" C " 5  
" D " 6  
B.S.M. 7  
War Diary 8-10  
File 11

SCHEDULE TO OPERATION ORDER NO. 144 21.9.17

WORKING PARTIES ON COMPLETION OF INTER-COMPANY RELIEF.

1. D COMPANY 4 Platoons - For work on assembly trench. Party to report to Lieut. Lattimer, 5th Field Co., C.E. at junction NEW BRUNSWICK and QUEBEC Trench.
2. B COMPANY 1 Platoon - To work on CANADA Trench. To report to Lieut. Kennedy, 7th Field Co.
3. B COMPANY 1 Platoon - For work with D Company's party.
4. A COMPANY  
C COMPANY Parties for carrying rations, water, and engineering supplies for forward platoons A and C Companies will be detailed from rear platoons of these Companies.
5. B COMPANY 3 Platoons - Daily For work on TOAST Trench. To report to Lieut. Lattimer 7.00 am.

NOTE/ Company Commanders of A and C will interview Company Commanders B and D respectively relative to above working parties which are similar to those which have been in operation the last few nights.

Arrangements will also be made between Companies in regard to tools etc., for these parties.

On completion of relief B and D Companies will detail usual carrying parties for their rations and water.

R. L. H. EWING, M.C.

Major/Adjutant

**S E C R E T**

OPERATION ORDER NO. 145

By

Lt. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O. COPY NO. \_\_\_\_\_

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Batta.

REFERENCE MAPS/ 5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

36c. S.W. 1/30,000

Merisourt Road 1/10,000

SEPTEMBER 23rd. 1918

1. INFORMATION 49th <sup>02a</sup> Battalion, E.R. Brigade Support, left sub-section, will relieve 42nd. Canadian Bn., R.H.C. in the front line, left sub-section, on the night 23rd/24th.
2. INTENTION Battalion will be relieved in the line by the 49th Canadian Battalion, E.R. 23rd/24th instant, and move into Brigade Support, left Sub-section. On completion of relief Companies will move and occupy area vacated by relieving Companies in Canada Trench. Signallers will go out with their Companies.
3. ADVANCE PARTY Advance Party of 1 Senior N.C.O. and 8 men per Company and 1 N.C.O. and 4 men from H.Q. will, on the afternoon of the 23rd instant, proceed under Company arrangements to the area to be taken over, of which 3 per Company and 1 from H.Q. will report to Sergt. Trafford, to be at new Battalion Ration Dump near new Battalion H.Q. in Canada Trench (T.S.I.a.3.5) at 8.00pm. to receive incoming rations.
4. GUIDES IN & OUT Guides for incoming Battalion, consisting of 2 per platoon and 2 for Battalion H.Q. will report to 49th Battalion H.Q. at 8.00 pm., and on completion of relief will act as guides out for their respective units.
5. OFFICERS' BAGGAGE ETC. Officers' Baggage, Orderly Room boxes, etc. will be carried to present Battalion Dump as soon as it becomes dusk, and be taken by limber to new Battalion Dump.
6. WATER TINS Water Tins will be left as Trench Stores.
7. RECEIPTS Receipts for S.A.A., Bombs, and Trench Stores will be obtained, copies to reach Battalion Orderly Room by noon 24th instant.
8. REPORTS On completion of relief report will be sent in by wire using the code phrase "Your O.C. 145 received at---" This is to be confirmed by Runner to present Bn. H.Q.
9. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS Battalion H.Q. on completion of relief will be in Canada Trench at T.S.I.a.3.5.

R. L. H. EWING, M.C.

Major/Adjutant

COPIES TO/	Brigade	1
	49th Bn.	2
	O.C. A Co.	3
	" B "	4
	" C "	5
	" D "	6
	Quartermaster?	
	B.S.M.	3
	War Diary	0-11
	File	18

By  
 Lieut. Colonel B. McLennan DSO.  
 Cmdg. 49th Cdn Bn. R.H.C  
 5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

Map Reference  
 Sheet 36 c S.W. 1/30,000  
 Maricourt Road 1/10,000

Friday September 28th. 1917

1. INFORMATION An interBrigade relief will take place on the night of 29/30th inst. The R.G.R. relieving the P.F.C.L.I in front the right sub-sector and the 42nd Cdn Bn. relieving the 49th Cdn Bn. E.R. in front line left sub-sector.
2. INTENTION The 42nd Cdn Bn will relieve the 49th Cdn Bn E.R in the front line left sub-sector on the night 29/30th as follows.
- A. Coy Will relieve B. Coy of the 49th Cdn Bn E.R. on the right. Three Platoons in TOLEDO TRENCH and one ~~km~~ platoon in NEW BRUNSWICK TRENCH.
- C. Coy. Will relieve A. Coy 49th Cdn Bn. E.R on the left in TOLEDO TRENCH, but will place one Platoon in TEDDIE GERRARD TRENCH.
- B. Coy. Will relieve C. Coy of the 49th Cdn. Bn. E.R. in ~~TRENCH~~ TEDDIE GERRARD TRENCH.
- D. Coy. Will relieve D. Coy of the 49th Cdn Bn. E.R in CANADA TRENCH.
3. TIME Companies will move in the order named at 7.30 p.m.
4. ADVANCE PARTIES GUIDES, LEWIS GUNS, notified. Will be under company arrangement as already notified.
5. OFFICERS BAGGAGE WATER TINS, RATIONS ETC. Will be dealt with as already notified
6. TRENCH STORES Companies will turn in to the orderly room by 12.00 midnight on the night of relief.  
 (a) Receipts for S.A.A., Bombs, Water Tins, and other trench stores handed over.  
 (b) Complete list of trench stores taken over in new location.
7. REPORTS On completion of relief, report will be sent in by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O. 146 received at - - " This will be confirmed by runner. to Battalion Headquarters.
8. BATTALION HEADQUARTERS On completion of relief Battalion Headquarters will be in QUEBEC TRENCH T. 16.a.9.0.

R.L.H. Ewing.  
 Major & Adjutant.

Copy No 1 7th C.I.B  
 2 49th Bn. E.R No 7 Q.M.  
 3 O.C. A. Coy 8 E.S.M.  
 4 O.C. B. Coy 9- 11 War Diary  
 5 O.C. C. Coy 12. File.  
 6 O.C. D. Coy



CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY.

-----000-----

-:- OF -:-

48<sup>th</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION - 29<sup>th</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM 1<sup>st</sup> October TO 31<sup>st</sup> October 1917

-----000-----

VOLUME 25

with appendix A

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Cdn. Battn.

from 1st to 31st October, 1917.

Volume 25.

Diary Text

5 Pages.

Appendix A.

O.O. 147 dated the 1st October, Instructions re inter-Co relief on night 3rd and 4th August.

O.O. No. 148 dated the 5th October, Instructions re relief of 42nd Bn. by 22nd Bn. on night 5th/6th October.

O.O. No. 149 dated the 15th October, Instructions for move of 7th C.I.B. to ~~CAMSTRE~~ area on the 15th.

O. O. No. 150 dated the 22nd October, Instructions to 42nd Bn. reference move of 7th C.I.B. to St. Jean area on the 23rd.

A

25  
Army Form C. 2118

WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p style="text-align: center;"><i>Original</i></p> <p style="text-align: center;">WAR DIARY</p> <p style="text-align: center;">42ND. CANADIAN BATTALION, R. H. C.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">for the month of OCTOBER, 1917.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">-----oo-----</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Confidential</i></p>	

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Cross heading not required.)

1917	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
OCTOBER	1ST.		The Battalion still in front line, left sub-sector, MERICOULT. A Company on the right with three platoons in front line in TOLEDO Trench and one platoon in immediate support in NEW BRUNSWICK Trench. C Company on the left with three platoons in TOLEDO Trench and one platoon in immediate support in TEDDY GERRARD. B Company in immediate support in TEDDY GERRARD Trench. D Company in support in CANADA Trench. Bn. H. Q. in QUEBEC Trench.	
	3RD.		Lieut. J. R. Aldridge struck off strength on being invalided to England, Sick. Lieut. R. F. Studd promoted Temporary Captain. Oct. 3rd/4th an inter-Company relief took place. B Company relieved A Company on the right, D Company relieved C Company on the left. Companies relieved took over support positions previously held by relieving companies.	JH
	4TH.		The enemy dropped a fairly heavy barrage of 5.9, 4.1 and .77cm. shells, including gas shells, on our front and immediate support trenches and on those of the Battalion on the right. Our casualties were slight. During the whole tour constant patrolling was carried out all night in No-mans-land which on our front was about 800 yards wide, by Officers' patrols of from ten to fifteen in strength, who covered the whole Battalion frontage up to a distance of about 600 yards in front. Although the tour in the front line and support trenches was a long one, nevertheless, owing to the perfect weather and good condition of the trenches it was not an uncomfortable tour. During the tour much work was done by the Battalion in putting out wire in front of its positions and improving the trenches, and numerous working parties were supplied to the Engineers and Tunnelers improving communication trenches, completing dugouts, and carrying material. The tour was without incident worthy of particular comment with the exception of the patrols. Casualties during the tour were: KILLED - 1 DIED OF WOUNDS - 1 WOUNDED - 2	JH
	5TH/6TH.		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was relieved by the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade, the 42nd. Canadian Battalion being relieved by the 22nd. Canadian Bn. Upon relief the Battalion proceeded to NEUVILLE ST. VAAST and THELUS CAVE Areas, Headquarters and A Company spending the remainder of the night in dugouts and billets in NEUVILLE ST. VAAST. B, C, and D Companies in dugouts in THELUS CAVE Area.	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
Sheet or 2.  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

(Erase heading not required.)

Photo	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	OCTOBER	6TH	<p>The Battalion (less Transport and Transport Details) left Neuville St. Vaast and Thelus Cave Areas at 11.00am. and proceeded by route march to MONT ST. ELOI Station, where it entrained at 3. 0' Clock and proceeded by train to TINGUES, where it detrained at 4. 0' Clock and proceeded by route march to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE, where Battalion went into billets for short rest and training. The Transport and Transport Details proceeded by road from Transport Lines (La Targette) to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE.</p> <p>Extensive training was carried on in Field work and on the parade ground, and shooting was carried on by the whole Battalion on the rifle range, 3 practices being fired at 200 yards. Lewis Gun firing was also practiced at the ranges, and live bomb throwing and rifle grenade firing at the Bombing area.</p>	
		8TH.	<p>Lieut. (A/Captain) J. C. Stewart, MC. classed P.B. and struck off strength as at 22.9.17 having been appointed an Area Commandant.</p>	
		10TH.	<p>443043 L/Cpl. Vogel, J. A., 901937 Pte. Leslie, A. W., 902032 Pte. Jackson, W. T., all of A Company were awarded the Military Medal for the outstanding part which they played in the patrol of the night of September 29TH/30TH</p>	
		11TH.	<p>The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was inspected by G.O.C., 1st. Army, who was accompanied by G.O.C., Canadian Corps. After the inspection the Brigade marched passed in column of route.</p>	
		12TH.	<p>Lieut. W. W. DeRossiter, Bn. Transport Officer, died. He had been with the Battalion since its organization, having enlisted in Canada on the 20th May, 1915, as a private, and having been promoted Sergeant soon after. He came to France with the Battalion on 9th October 1915, and received his Commission as a Lieutenant on the 12th November, 1915, becoming Transport Officer shortly after. During his whole connection with the Battalion he gave most efficient and devoted service. He was mentioned in despatches on the 9th April, 1917, and on many occasions showed courage and coolness under fire. Previous to his connection with the Battalion he had seen long service with the Royal North West Mounted Police, and served in the South African Campaign as Squadron Sergeant Major with C Squadron, 2nd. Battalion, 1st Canadian Mounted Rifles. His loss was greatly felt by both Officer and men of the Battalion.</p>	

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Sheet <sup>of</sup> 3

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Excess heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Place 1917	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and reference to Appendices
OCTOBER	16TH.		The Battalion proceeded from MAGNICOURT EN COMTE to TINGUES, where with the details of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade it entrained and proceeded to GODWAERSVELDE. On arriving at GODWAERSVELDE the Battalion proceeded by route march through CAESTRE to within a short distance of HAZEBROUCK where it was quartered in tents and billets.	
	18TH.		The following Officers having reported to the Battalion, were taken on strength, and posted to Companies as under: Lieut. G. L. Oglvie,                      D Company "   W. R. Lindsay,                    A   " "   S. P. Earnshaw,                    E   "	X
	19TH.		Lieut. Myer T. Ophen was awarded the Military Cross for his part in connection with the patrol 29th/30th September.	X
	20TH.		Major W. G. Peterson, who has been supernumerary Major to our Battalion since the disbanding of the 73rd. Canadian Bn., R.H.C. and has had charge of the 12th C.I.B. School for the past three months is struck off strength being attached to 86th Canadian Inf. Battalion.	X
	22ND.		The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade was inspected by His Royal Highness the Duke of Connaught on a parade ground near BORRE. During its stay at quarters in the HAZEBROUCK Area the Battalion carried on daily training.	X
	23RD.		The Battalion moved off from its quarters at 2.30 am., and proceeded by route march to CAESTRE Station where it entrained at 6.30 am. and proceeded by train to YPRES, where it detrained and after spending three or four hours proceeded by route march to CALIFORNIA Trench where it took up a position in Divisional Reserve relieving the 4th C.M.R. being quartered in dugouts, bivouacs and pill boxes. During its tour in Divisional Reserve the Battalion supplied large working parties carrying engineering material and working for the Artillery hauling the guns into position.	X
	25TH.		Lieut. Chas. K. Macpherson was killed by shell fire in CALIFORNIA Trench during an	X

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
Sheet of 1  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. C. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

(Enter heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	1917			
OCTOBER	25TH		<p>inspection of the trench previous to handing over to relieving Battalion. Lieut. Macpherson had previously been with the 161st Battalion, C. E. F., where he held the rank of Captain but reverted to Lieutenant in order to proceed to France, and joined the 80th Canadian Reserve Bn. in England, from which he was drafted to our Battalion. He had only been with the Battalion eight weeks but had proved himself a most efficient Officer and his death is regretted by all.</p> <p>The Battalion moved from CALIFORNIA Trench to I Camp in the ST. JEAN Area where it was quartered in tents. We continued to supply large working parties to the Artillery and Engineers.</p>	
OCTOBER	27TH.		<p>The Battalion, under command of Major Norworthy, DSO, MC., moved into Brigade Reserve near POMMERN CASTLE, being temporarily attached to the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade which had made the last advance up the PASSCHENDAELE RIDGE.</p> <p>While at POMMERN CASTLE the Battalion was engaged on working parties carrying and laying bathmats etc. over GRAVENSTAFEL RIDGE to WATERLOO. A considerable number of casualties occurred owing to the fact that the bivouacs were exposed to shelling.</p>	
OCTOBER	28TH		<p>The Battalion came under orders of the 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade. Working parties to a strength of 485 were furnished this day.</p>	
OCTOBER	30TH		<p>A further advance by the Canadian Corps was made on PASSCHENDAELE RIDGE, the 49th and P. P. C. L. I. taking part, the R. C. R. being in Support and the 42nd. Battalion in Reserve.</p> <p>The Battalion received word at 1.00 p.m. that working parties for the day were cancelled, and that the men were to stand to at 2.00 p.m. Major Norworthy returned from Brigade with orders for the Battalion to move up to GRAVENSTAFEL RIDGE and take over from the R. C. R. who were to move forward. The Battalion moved off at 3.00 p.m. The men were bivouaced on ABRAHAM HEIGHTS, Bn. H. Q. being at OTTO FARM, which was shared by the R. C. R.. Advance parties consisting of the Scout Officer, Company Commanders and some N.C.Os from each Company proceeded at once to the forward area to familiarise themselves with the situation there.</p> <p>Following casualties were caused to A and B Companies parties by shell fire, namely, Lieut. C. S. Martin and 3 N.C.Os. from A Company and 2 N.C.Os. from B Company being wounded. Lieut. M. T. Cohen, MC. was sent forward to replace Lieut. Martin. At 7.30 p.m., at the request of</p>	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY  
Sheet *or* 5 42nd. Canadian Batta.  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

Army Form C. 2118.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	OCTOBER 30TH		<p>Brigade a party under Lieut. A. Fleming was sent forward to assist in carrying wounded from the front line down the GRAFENSTAFEL ROAD to <b>BOMME REDOUBT</b>, and did very valuable work.</p> <p>Lieut. L. H. Biggar became a casualty suffering from a severe case of shell shock also Lieut. E. A. McFall who had been doing duty as Brigade Burial Officer. In both cases they were blown from their bivouacs the other occupants being killed.</p> <p>At 9.00 p.m. a wire was sent to Transport Lines asking for Lieut. E. S. Turner and Lieut. C. G. Heward.</p> <p>Lieut. G. H. Fletcher was wounded.</p>	
	OCTOBER 31ST.		<p>Advance parties on their return reported on conditions in the front line, which owing to the swampy nature of the ground was not connected up with the 5th C.M.R. on the left or the 72nd. Battalion (12th Brigade) on the right. Three of the Battalion Observers and the M.C.Os. of the advance parties remained in the front line over night to further reconnoitre the ground.</p> <p>3.35 a.m. Lieut. E. S. Turner and Lieut. C. G. Heward reported and proceeded to their Companies.</p> <p>The Battalion received instructions to move forward and take over the Brigade front line from the 49th Cdn. Bn., and P.P.C.L.I., and that they would be called on to carry out an operation to rectify the front line, 2 Companies of the R.C.R. to be attached in support. Major R. Willcock, M.C. was sent for from Transport Lines and reported at 3.30 p.m.</p> <p>Casualties while on <b>ABRAHAM HEIGHTS</b> were heavy considering the shortness of our stay there, and were attributable to the fact that the locality was very exposed and was consistently shelled.</p> <p>The Battalion moved forward about 7.30 p.m., the exact moment for the move being determined by Captain A. W. Graffey, the senior Company Commander, to whose discretion it was left to choose a lull in the shelling. No casualties were suffered on the way in.</p> <p>Battalion H.Q. was established in a pill box on <b>BELLEVUE SPUR</b>. The relief being still in progress.</p>	<p><i>J.H.</i></p> <p><i>Battalion Liaison Lt Col</i></p> <p><i>Quay, 42nd Can Bn P.O.</i></p>



## Appendix A

OPERATION ORDER No. 147

by

Lt. Colonel R. McLennan DSO  
Comd. 4th Cda Bn. R.H.C.  
Royal Highlanders of Canada

Copy 1.0

.....Tuesday Oct. .

- 1 INTENTION. There will be an inter-company relief on night 3rd/4th inst.
- 2 Positions. B. Coy will relieve A Coy on the right sub-sector  
D. Coy will relieve C. Coy on left sub-sector  
Companies being relieved will take over support positions previously held by relieving companies.
- 3 TIME Time of relief will be arranged between companies concerned, and will be as early as darkness will permit.
- 4 Advance Party. Small advance parties will be sent as per arrangements between Company Commanders
- 5 Lewis Guns. Lewis Guns may be relieved during daylight but care must be taken not to avoid exposing the guns or relief to view.
- 6 Patrol Party for first patrol will be sent up during the afternoon
- 7 Route. B. Coy will move up by way of TOAST TRENCH.  
D. Coy will move up by way of TOAST TRENCH as far as TEDDIE GERRARD, balance overland.  
Companies relieved will return overland.
- 8 Working Parties On completion of relief working parties will be sent out (as notified later)
- 9 Reports. Companies will report completion of relief by telephone using the code message "Your O.O. 147 received at ----" which will be confirmed by runner.

H.L. Hoyles.  
Lieut / A/Adjt

- Copy No 1 Brigade  
2 C.O.  
3 A. Coy.  
4 B. Coy  
5 C. Coy  
6 D. Coy  
7 C.M.  
8 -10 War Diary  
11. R.H.C.

by  
Lieut. Col. B. McLennan DSO.  
Cmdg. 42nd Canadian Battalion R.H.C  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada

## Reference Maps.

Mericourt Rd. 1/10,000  
36 C. 1/2,000  
Marocuil 1/40,000  
36 B. 1/40,000  
51 C. 1/40,000

Friday, October 5th 1917

GENERAL

1. INFORMATION. The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will be relieved in the line by the 5th Canadian Infantry Brigade on the day of 5th and night of 5th/6th October and will move to CHELLERS AREA.
  2. INTENTION. The 42nd Canadian Battalion will be relieved in the front line by the 22nd Canadian Battalion on night 5th/6th October and will proceed to NEUVILLE ST VAAST from where it will proceed on the 6th inst to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE. On the 6th inst. the Battalion <sup>loss</sup> transport and details will entrain at (hour to be notified later) at ECURIE and detrain at TINQURS.
  3. TRANSPORT & DETAILS. Transport (including all details at Transport Line 2) will on the 6th inst. move independently of Battalion from NEUVILLE ST. VAAST to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE.
  4. ADVANCE PARTIES. As already arranged Advance Party from details at Transport Lines will proceed to NEUVILLE ST. VAAST and an Advance Party of 1 Officer and 5 O.R from the Battalion to MAGNICOURT EN COMTE.
- N I G H T. 5th/6th
5. OFFICERS BAGGAGE Etc. As soon as it becomes dusk on night 5th/6th, Officers baggage, Orderly Room boxes, etc from Headquarters and A. & B. & D. Coys will be piled at present Battalion Ration Dump, and baggage from C. Coy at Junction NEW BRUNSWICK ROAD and CANADA TRENCH from which dumps they will be carried out by limber
  6. LEWIS GUNS. When the crews have been relieved in the line Lewis Guns will be taken to the baggage dumps of their respective companies and will be carried by limber to Transport Lines. One member of each crew will attend and see to the loading of the guns and will then report to Sergt Gallow who will take the party out,
  7. WATER TINS. Water tins will be handed over to relieving Battalion as trench stores as follows:-
 

Headquarters.	24
A. Coy.	28
B. Coy.	23
C. Coy.	30
D. Coy.	25

 Surplus tins will be sent out with baggage.

P.T.O.

8 GUIDES FOR INCOMING Bn.

2 O.R. from Headquarters and 3 O.R. each from A. B. & D. Coys will report to Lieut Trout at Battalion Headquarters at 4.30 p.m. and proceed to meet incoming Battalion at THELUS CAVE at 6.45 p.m. 3 O.R. from C Coy for same purpose will join party on its way out at Junction TOAST and CANADA TRENCH at 4.45 p.m.

9. RECEIPTS CERTIFICATES

Receipts for S.A.A., Bombs, Water tins and all other Trench stores handed over will be obtained together with certificates that the trenches have been left in a clean and sanitary condition. Copies will be forwarded to the Orderly Room by 8.00 a.m. 6th inst.

10. REPORTS.

On completion of relief in the line report will be sent by wire using the code phrase "Your O.O. 148 received at-----" This will be confirmed by runner.

H.L. Hoyles,  
Lieut & A/Adjt.

- Copy No. 1 7th C.I.Bn.
- 2 22nd Cdn Bn.
- 3 O.E. A. Coy
- 4 B. Coy
- 5 C. Coy
- 6 D. Coy.
- 7 Q.M. S.
- 8 B.S.M.
- 9-11 War Diary
- 12 File.

As soon as it becomes known that the 7th C.I.Bn. is to be relieved, the Adjutant will be notified and will be required to issue the necessary orders for the relief. The Adjutant will also be required to issue the necessary orders for the relief of the 22nd Cdn Bn. The Adjutant will also be required to issue the necessary orders for the relief of the O.E. A. Coy, B. Coy, C. Coy, D. Coy, Q.M. S., B.S.M., War Diary, and File.

Water time will be handed over to relieving Battalion as usual at 8.00 a.m. 6th inst.

Headquarters: 22nd Cdn Bn.  
A. Coy. 22  
B. Coy. 22  
C. Coy. 22  
D. Coy. 22

Receipts time will be sent out with packages.

P.T.O.

By  
 Lt. Col. E. McLennan, DSO.  
 Cndg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion  
 5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MAP REFERENCES/

MONDAY, OCTOBER 15TH, 1917

Sheet 36 B 1/40,000  
 Sheet 27 1/40,000  
 HAZEBROUCK 1/100,000

1. INFORMATION:

7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Group will move by train to CAESTRE AREA on 16th instant.

2. INTENTION

42nd. Canadian Battalion will entrain at TINGUES 16th instant as hereafter mentioned and detrain at GODEWAERSVELDI

3. ROUTE & ORDER OF MARCH

(a) Transport will be parked, ready to move off, as already arranged at 8.00 am., arriving at TINGUES at 9.40am. and departing by Train No. 21 at 12.40 pm.

(b) Battalion, less Transport and C Company (with kitchen and 1 limbered wagon, complete turnout) will fall in, in column of route, on CHELERS ROAD, head of column opposite Quartermaster's Billet, ready to move off, at 9.30 am., in the following order:

HEADQUARTERS  
 A COMPANY  
 B " "  
 D " "

arriving at TINGUES at 11.10 am., and departing by Train No. 21 at 12.40 pm.

(c) C Company (with cooker and 1 limbered wagon, complete turnout) will pass junction of CHELERS ROAD at 1.30 pm. arriving at TINGUES at 3.10 pm., and departing by Train No. 23 at 4.40 pm.

Pipers will report to Companies.

4. RATIONS & WATER BOTTLES

Rations for 16th will be carried on the men. Rations for the 17th inst will be drawn after arrival at detraining point.

Water Bottles will be filled.

5. LEWIS GUNS BAGGAGE, MESS BOXES ETC

Will be turned in as already arranged.

6. MARCHING OUT STATE

Marching Out State showing number of Officers, O.R., animals, 4 wheeled vehicles, 2 wheeled vehicles, and bicycles entraining, will be turned into Orderly Room not later than 7.00 am. for transmission to R.T.O. TINGUES

7. BILLETS

Billets will be clear of men by 8.00 am., and ready for inspection by 8.30 am.

8. MARCH ROUTINE

When on the march by day intervals of 200 yards will be maintained between Companies and at least 500 yards between Battalions.

Halts will be made from 60 to 60 minutes after each clock hour.

9.

PICQUET

A picquet consisting of Lieut. McIntyre and 30 N.C.Os. and men from D Company will report to Entraining Staff Officer at TINQUES immediately on arrival of Battalion. They will be on duty during the journey and until the Battalion has completed its detraining. They will be posted under instructions of the Entraining Staff Officer to see that no men leave the train after entrainment.

10.

ARRIVALOF UNITS

Units or Detachments on arrival at TINQUES will report immediately to Entraining Staff Officer.

11.

ENTRAININGOFFICERS

Entraining Staff Officer at TINQUES will be Captain W. J. WILBY, MC, 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

Detraining Staff Officer at GODEWAERSVELDE will be furnished by 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade.

12.

R.T.O.

Any instructions given by the R.T.O. with regard to entraining or detraining must be obeyed by all ranks.

13.

ADVANCE PARTYAND GUIDES

Advance Billiting Party consisting of Lieut. J. D. McLeod and 5 O.R. who have already proceeded, will act as guides on detrainment.

H. L. HOLLIS,

Lieut. &amp; A/Adjutant

COPY NO.	1	7th C.I.B.
	2	C.O.
	3	O.C. A Company
	4	O.C. B "
	5	O.C. C "
	6	O.C. D "
	7.	Quartermaster
	8.	Scout Officer
	9.	Signalling Officer
	10.	B.S.M.
	11.	Transport
	12.-14	War Diary
	15	File.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER NO. 110.

Copy No. .... *107* .....

by  
Lieut. Col. B. Logan R.C.I.C.  
Comd., 42nd Canadian Battalion,  
Sta Roy 1 "High" area of Canada.

REF:  
Sheet 27. 1/40,000  
Sheet 29. 1/40,000

MONDAY, OCTOBER 22ND 1917.

1. INFORMATION.

7th Canadian Infantry Bde. transport, will  
move by rail to SE JEAN area on 23rd inst.

2. INTENTION: (a)

42nd Battalion, less transport, and "D" Coy., will fall  
in ready to move off at 2.30 p.m. on Main Road behind  
Ordinary Room in following order.

HEADQUARTERS.

"A" COY. BATT.

"B" " "

"C" " "

(b) "D" Coy., will await arrival of Battalion at road junction  
(V. 12, 28, 75) and fall in rear of "C" Coy.

(c) Coys., will be numbered off in tens, excluding Officers.  
Cooks will march with companies.

(d) Pipes and Drums will report to Companies.

(e) Transport will proceed by road in accordance with instructions  
already given.

Head of Battalion will reach CAESTRE station at 4.30  
p.m. and Battalion will be entrained by 4.30 p.m. Nothing  
but the equipment carried on the men will be taken on  
board train.

Heavy Marching Order.

3. DINNERS.

4. RATIONS &

UNDER BOTTLES.

Unspiced portion of days rations will be carried.

Water bottles will be filled.

5. LEWIS GUNN,

BAGGAGE, ORDERLY

BOOKS & ESS

BOXES, ETC.

Will be sent with us already notified.

6. MARCHING

OUT SECTE.

Marching out start, showing number of Officers, N.C.Os.,  
and men entraining will be turned into Ordinary Room.

Company Commanders and Lieut. Aid for Ho., will be  
responsible that their tents, blankets, etc., and rations are  
left in a clean and sanitary condition.

7. INSPECTION

OF BILLETTS.

A list not of 300 yards will be maintained between  
Company & 1st Marching through CAESTRE and on arrival  
at station.

8. MARCH ROUTINE.

9. DETERMINANT

NUMBER.

Will be at YPRES. Major Northcote and Major O.R., per  
Company from advance parties already sent forward will  
be at Battalion at a prominent point and act as guides. On  
leaving determining point a distance of not less than  
twenty-five yards will be maintained between platoons.

HUGH L. BOYLES.

Copies to.... No. 1.  
2.  
3.  
4.  
5.  
6.  
7.  
8.  
9.  
10.  
11.  
12.  
13 - 16

7th C.I. Bde.  
C.O.  
O.C. A. Coy.  
O.C. B " "  
O.C. C " "  
O.C. D " "  
Quarters Staff.  
Squad Officer.  
N.C.O.  
Signaling Officer.  
B.S.M.  
Transport  
War Diary.

Lieut. Col/Adjt.

CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY.

-----oOo-----

-- OF --

42<sup>nd</sup> CANADIAN BATTALION — 23<sup>rd</sup> CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM 1<sup>st</sup> November TO 30<sup>th</sup> November 1917.

-----oOo-----

VOLUME 26

With appendices  
1-2.

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Battalion 3rd Canadian Division,  
from 1st to 30th November, 1917.

Volume 26.

Diary Text

13 Pages.

Appendix I.

Map of Passchendaele.

" 2

O.O. No. 151 dated the 12th November, Instructions for relief of 52nd Bn. by 42nd Bn. on the night 14th and 15th.

"

O.O. No. 152 dated the 17th November, Instructions by 42nd Bn. by 2nd Bn. on the 17th and 18th November.

O.O. No. 153, Instructions re move of 7th C.I.B. on November 19th.

O.O. No. 154 dated the 19th November, Instructions for move of 42nd Bn. to BOUREGQ on the 20th.



WAR DIARY  
or  
INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erased heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p style="text-align: center;"><b>42ND. CANADIAN BATTALION, R. H. C.</b></p> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">ORIGINAL &amp; CONFIDENTIAL</p> <p style="text-align: center;">WAR DIARY</p> <hr style="width: 10%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">for the month of</p> <hr style="width: 10%; margin: auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">NOVEMBER - 1917</p> <hr style="width: 20%; margin: auto;"/>	



## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

~~INTELLIGENCE-SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

Sheet 2

Summary of Events and Information

Remarks and references to Appendices

Place	Date	Hour		
NOVEMBER 1917	1ST.		Cor.	<p>D. 5. b. 0. 1., and at 8.00 p.m. enemy advanced post at D. 5. a. 70. 10 would be shot up with rifle grenades. As soon as the situation quietened down O. C. C Company would establish two posts between lone tree and B Company H. Q. All the posts were successfully established but no machine gun was encountered at D. 5. a. 70. 10.</p> <p>On the same night a patrol from A Company, Lieut. M. T. Cohen and 11 O. R., was sent out to examine Graf House. They found that it and the cross roads at D. 5. d. 4. 8. were both strongly held by the enemy.</p>
			2ND.	<p>Early on the night of Nov. 2nd./3rd. our B Company were relieved by a Company of the 16th Canadian Battalion. D Company moved into Support trench behind B Company running along North side of Gravesstapel Road.</p> <p>On the night of November 2nd./3rd. the Battalion undertook an independent operation for the purpose of capturing a pill box at D. 5. b. 30. 30, and the enemy advanced line along the road from D. 5. b. 30. 20 to D. 5. d. 40. 70, including GRAP HOUSE, and the consolidation of a line fifty to one hundred yards in advance of the same.</p> <p>Major Noreworthy's report on this operation is as follows:            "We were of opinion that the enemy held this line with outposts only and it was decided to attempt a stealth attack supported if necessary by the three Stokes guns which were in our Battalion area.</p> <p>7 Officers and about 200 other ranks comprised the attacking force which was divided into seven parties with tasks as follows:-</p> <p><u>Party No. 1</u> Lieut. Hobart and 25 O. R. to clear enemy trench and rifle pits on North side of GRAVESTAPEL-MOSSELMARKT Road. Two Vickers guns were posted at D. 4. b. 9. 0. and ordered to cover his left flank with bursts of fire.</p> <p><u>Party No. 2</u> Lieut. McIntyre and 25 O. R. to capture pillbox at D. 5. b. 3. 3.</p> <p><u>Party No. 3</u> Lieut. Sewell with 2 Lewis Guns, 1 Section Rifle Grenadiers and two snipers was stationed at D. 5. central on high South bank of road to protect advance of parties 1 and 11 by engaging enemy posts on opposite side of road.</p> <p><u>Party No. 4</u> Lieut. Macaskill and 20 O. R. to work right along road running S. E. from D. 5. b. 3. 1. to GRAP HOUSE.</p> <p><u>Party No. 5</u> Lieut. Turner and 20 O. R. divided into two smaller parties to deal with machine gun and dugout at D. 5. d. 3. 9.</p>
				<p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p> <p>15/11</p>

## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence

Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place  
1917Date  
1917

Hour

Sheet 3

Summary of Events and Information

Remarks and  
references to  
Appendices

NOVEMBER 22A Cont.

Party No. 6 Lieut. Parkins and 22 O.R. to cover road running N.E. from D. 5. d. 4.7. and to work left along road running N.W. from same road junction.

Party No. 7 Lieut. Cohen and 24 O.R. to capture GRAP HOUSE.

All parties were in position and moved forward at zero hour (2.00 a.m.) Almost immediately parties 2 and 3 were met by fire from three machine guns which appeared to be located in front of road and one gun firing from further back. Our parties engaged them with rifle grenades and were able to silence one gun. At 2.35 a.m. Lieut. Macaskill sent back the following message.

\*To O. C., Salmon,

All our grenades are fired McIntyre and myself are trying to drive him out but unable to do so so far.

P. L. O. 2.35 a.m.

D. B. Macaskill.

A few men have been hit including 1 killed D.B.M.\* at the same time McIntyre by two green flares called for the Stokes to open. Owing to short fuzes (on which a separate report has been made to you) their shells burst very high and with out effect.

At 2.40 a.m. 4 men with additional Rifle Grenades had been sent up to Macaskill, and at 3.02 I ordered 5 Rifle Grenadiers with more grenades to go up to support McIntyre. Just at this time Sergt. Ormandy, Lt. McIntyre's platoon sergeant returned wounded. I asked why they were not calling for more Stokes. (The arrangement had been that each flare would call for 10 rounds only) He replied that the shells were falling short and of more danger to our party than the enemy. I then gave orders that the Stokes lengthen to their extreme range and continue firing until further orders.

At 3.15 I received message from Macaskill as follows:-

O. C., Salmon,

McIntyre hit, only about 15 men left of the two Coys. Remainder can't trace. Please let me know what to do.

3. a.m.

D. B. Macaskill\*

I felt that with the wounding of Mr. McIntyre and failure of the Stokes and with no longer any element of surprise, all hope of his party reaching the pillbox had gone. I accordingly gave verbal instructions to Cpl. Lettney to bring in the remainder of McIntyre's

## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. This page  
will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Sheet 4	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Argentina
1917 NOVEMBER	2ND			<p>Cont. party, and despatched the following message to Macaskill:-</p> <p>"3.16 Lieut. Macaskill, Bring in your party Stokes Gun will continue firing to cover withdrawal."</p> <p>S. C. Norworthy.</p> <p>I then sent word to Hobart that McIntyre's and Macaskill's parties were being withdrawn and that he might use his judgment whether he withdrew or dug in where he was. He replied that he had only got forward about sixty yards, had suffered some casualties from a machine gun on his left, and that he would withdraw.</p> <p>At 4.02 Lieut. Shaw, Stokes Gun Officer, reported that the use of the rings necessary to obtain extreme range had so heated his barrels that two guns were out of commission. The other gun remained trained on GRAP HOUSE but no signal had been received from Lieut. Cohen to open fire. I ordered him to resume fire with the two guns as soon as barrels cooled but to leave the one gun trained on GRAP. Meanwhile the following reports had come in from my right Company Commander. Messages Nos. 1 and 11 being received together at 3.27 a.m.</p> <p>No. 1 "Lieut. Parkin's party is reported held up by a machine gun on its right at about 50 yards from cross roads. Sgt. Smith says they need support. I have instructed him to press forward. He has had only 4 casualties so far known to his party, 3 casualties to Mr. Cohen's party. 3.15 a.m. C. G. Howard"</p> <p>No. 11 "Mr. Cohen is in large ruin at GRAP."</p> <p>No. 111. "No report yet from Cohen Sgt. Smith is still held up by shell fire so I have sent as reinforcements his carrying party under Sgt. McLennan. Have sent an extra Lewis Gun to Cohen as 3 of his crew has been knocked out. Can you let me have reinforcements for my garrison and supports as they are getting very few. 4.15 a.m. C. G. Howard"</p> <p>A platoon of C Company, which was in support behind Coy. Headquarters was ordered</p>	<p>ASW.</p> <p>ESB.</p> <p>ASW.</p> <p>ESB.</p> <p>ASW.</p>

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II,  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

or

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Brose heading not required.)

42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Army Form C. 2118.

Place Date Hour

1917  
NOVEMBER 2ND, Cont.

Sheet 5

Summary of Events and Information

Remarks and  
references to  
Appendices

to report to Lieut. Heward to strengthen his garrison. Meanwhile Party No. 5 had been held up about 50 yards from the German line by a machine gun. A verbal message was received asking for instructions and I ordered a withdrawal. Party 6 had lost its Officer Lieut. Parkins wounded very soon after zero hour, but had pushed on to its objective i. e., road junction at D. 5. d. 4.8. Their position was very difficult however owing to machine gun fire from higher ground on their left and Major Willcock whom I had sent out to look over the situation ordered a withdrawal. I had given him authority to take this step if thought advisable.

Party No. 7, Lieut. Cohen and 20 O. R. detailed to capture GRAF HOUSE advanced in three parties, the left party consisting of a Sergeant and 5 men become scattered and appears to have rendered Mr. Cohen very little assistance. The two remaining parties reached GRAF HOUSE and on their approach its garrison, which consisted of 5 or 6 men, fled. Our party occupied the ruin where they were subjected to considerable M.G. and rifle fire. After about 20 minutes a party of about 15 Germans advanced to the attack but were driven off by rifle and Lewis Gun fire. Later a much larger body advanced but were also halted by fire from our Lewis Gun which expended in all 15 pounds.

The Germans however under cover of darkness were able to creep up to within effective bombing distance and our party suffered a number of casualties from cylindrical stick and egg bombs as well as rifle and M.G. fire. When the ruin had been in our possession about an hour Lieut. Cohen was killed by a bullet through the abdomen. The garrison was now reduced to 5, consisting of Lce. Corpl. J. Taylor and 4 others. Their L.G. ammunition had all been expended except half a pannier as well as all their rifle grenades and bombs, and L/Cpl. J. Taylor, who was himself wounded, decided to withdraw.

No message asking for reinforcements was received from Lieut. Cohen, and as only a few of the casualties of his party reported back through their Company Headquarters it was not evident to us that he was being so hard pressed. Our right Company Commander had however sent forward a Lewis Gun and crew with instructions to report to him, but most unfortunately it lost its way and joined Party No. 6.

Next morning the Germans were busy evacuating wounded from the vicinity of GRAF HOUSE giving proof of the effectiveness of the stand made there by our garrison. The outstanding figures in this desperate resistance were undoubtedly Lieut. Cohen and L/Cpl. J. Taylor, No. 1 of the Lewis Gun.

A Company of R. C. R's under Lieut. L. E. Longley did excellent work in evacuating wounded.

(Sgd.) S. C. Kersworthy, Major.

## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118. 1

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. This page  
will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place 1917	Date	Hour	Sheet 6	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER	22d.			<p>The death of Lieut. M. T. Cohen, MC, was much regretted by all ranks. He enlisted originally with the 129th Battalion and left Canada on the 21st. September 1916, with a draft of Officers. On the 22nd. September he volunteered to come to France with a draft of Officers and reported to the Battalion on the 24th of the same month. He had always been noted for his keenness and sangfroid, and only a few weeks before his death had distinguished himself in a patrol sent out on the night of the 29th/30th September, also recorded in this Diary for which he had been awarded the Military Cross. His splendid fight on the night of his death will be perpetuated in the history of the Battalion and was commented on in the highest terms by the G.O.C., 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade in an address to the Battalion given some days later. His body was recovered at a later date and was found on the highest point of the ruins of GRAP HOUSE. He had been shot in a number of places and had apparently fallen in attempting to organize the remnants of his party for the defense of the position he had captured.</p> <p>On this day Lieut. R. McIntyre, MC, died of wounds which he had received in the engagement. Lieut. McIntyre came out with the Battalion in October 1915 as Battalion Machine Gun Sergeant and rendered splendid services. On June 2nd. 1916 he received a severe wound in the arm but remained in the line until the Battalion was relieved four days later. He was then sent to hospital. On rejoining the Battalion he carried on the same duties and in operations on the Somme was again wounded on September 15th, 1916, and sent to England where he obtained a Commission, returning to the Battalion 30.7.17.</p> <p>While leading a platoon in the attack on 2.11.17 he received injuries from which he subsequently died.</p> <p>In the death of Lieut. McIntyre the Battalion sustained the loss of a very gallant Officer.</p> <p>As soon as it became dark a number of minor operations were carried out by the Battalion. A party from B Company, under Lieuts. Macaskill and Turner pushed forward two posts, one on the high South bank of the GRAVENSTAPEL Road at R. 5.b. 15.10 just a few yards short of the point reached by our attacking party on the night previous, the other a supporting post about 100 yards to its right rear.</p> <p>C Company, under Lieut. Macleod, pushed forward an additional post close to the lone tree at D. 5. a. 7.1. Lieut. Hobart took out a party of the 16th Battalion and established two posts near the FURST FARM pill box.</p>	<p>AS/A</p> <p>AS/W</p> <p>AS/W</p> <p>AS/A</p> <p>AS/A</p>

WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R.E.C.

Army Form C. 2118.

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Cross heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Sheet 7	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	1917				
	NOVEMBER 3RD.			<p>On the night of November 3rd/4th the Battalion was relieved by the 16th Battn. Canadians, 1st. Canadian Division. The relief being complete by 1.15 a.m. the Battalion moved to POMERN CASTLE where it spent the remainder of the night.</p> <p>Casualties during this tour in the forward area were:</p> <p>OFFICERS/ Killed 2 Med of wounds 1 Wounded 5            N.C.Os. / Killed 6 Med of Wounds 3 Wounded 16            O.R. / Killed 32 Med of Wounds 6 Wounded 99 Missing 4</p>	
	4TH.			<p>The Battalion moved from POMERN CASTLE to X Camp where it spent the day and the night of 4th/5th.</p>	BSA
	5TH.			<p>The Battalion moved by Route March from X Camp to entraining point on the railway near the Asylum at Ypres, where with the rest of the Brigade (less the 49th Battn.) it entrained about 10.00 a.m., and proceeded by train to ABEELE, thence by route march to billets and Camp around Troopist Farm near WATOU. The Battalion Transport moved by Route March from near GOLDFISH CHATEAU to WATOU Area on the same day.</p> <p>The Battalion stayed in WATOU Area from the 5th to the 14th. During this period, owing to casualties, to Officers, a complete readjustment throughout the Battalion was made:</p> <p>Lieut. J. D. MacLeod was transferred from C to A Company to be Actg. O.C. of the latter.</p> <p>Lieut. H. B. Trout, was transferred from HQ to A Company to be Actg. 2 i/c</p> <p>Lieut. E. S. Turner, was transferred from B to HQ to be Intelligence Officer</p> <p>Lieut. H. L. Boylee, (Asst. Adjt.) was transferred from HQ to C Coy. to be Actg. 2 i/c.</p> <p>Lieut. C. G. Howard, was transferred from A to HQ to be Assistant Adjutant.</p> <p>The Battalion made use of this period to re-equip, rest and train. During this period kilts were called in and tress issued.</p> <p>Nov. 5th. Lieut. D. B. Gilmore reported to the Battalion and was posted to B Company</p> <p>Nov. 6th. Lieut. W. Webb, reported to the Battalion and was posted to A Company.</p> <p>Nov. 8th. Lieut. A. J. MacLachlan reported to the Battalion and was posted to C Company</p>	BSA BSA BSA



## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118. †

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE-SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Sheet 8	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendix
NOVEMBER	1917	13TH.		On November 13th the Battalion with the remainder of the Brigade moved by Bus to YPRES, embussing took place between 7. and 8. O'clock in the morning, and the Battalion debussed on the Dickbusch Road near YPRES at about noon. Battalion proceeded by Route March to CALIFORNIA TRENCH (A Camp) where it spent the night.	
		14TH/15		<p>The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade (less the 49th Battalion) and 116th Battalion moved from the WEILTJE-ST. JEAN Area and relieved the 9th Canadian Infantry Brigade. The 42nd. Canadian Battalion relieving the 52nd. Canadian Battalion in the front and support lines left sub-section. C Company on the right in the front line. D Company on the left in the front line. A Company on the right in Support line, B Coy. on the left in Support line. The R. C. R. relieving the 58th Battalion on our right flank. The approximate location of the line was as follows:</p> <p>C Company - V. 30. b. 15.45 to V. 30. a. 60.20  D " - Left of C Company to V. 30. a. 10.80  A " - from V. 30. a. 60.30 to V. 30. a. 30.35  B " - from left of A Company to V. 30. a. 60.40  Battalion H. Q. at MEYCHEELE pill box D. 5. a. 90.00  C and D Companies H. Q. in trenches with the Companies  A and B Companies H. Q. in MOSSELMARKT pill box.</p> <p>On the left flank of the Battalion was the 8th Battalion, Royal Sussex Regiment. The relief was completed by 8.30 p.m.</p>	EGH
		15TH.		<p>Instructions were received from Brigade that the Battalion on our left was to endeavor to establish a post in VIRTUE FARM and that the left flank of our left Company would be pushed forward to conform. This operation to be carried out during the day. Instructions were issued to the left Company Commander accordingly, but on his getting in touch with the right Company of the Battalion on our left he received the information that the post in VIRTUE FARM would not be established.</p>	EGH
		16TH.		<p>The Battalion on our left was relieved on the night of the 15th/16th by 1st. Battalion Cameron Highlanders, who on the 16th established a post in VIRTUE FARM to which our</p>	EGH

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, B.H.C.

Army Form C. 2118. F

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. This page will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Broom heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Sheet 9	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices																		
NOVEMBER	16TH.			<p>left Company conformed by swinging forward its left flank and establishing connecting posts. Orders were received from Brigade on the same day that the 1st. Cameron Highlanders would, on the night of the 16th/17th, by a stealth operation push forward and occupy VOCATION FARM, and that the 42nd. Canadian Battalion would conform by swinging forward its left flank and establishing connecting posts. The operation commenced at 5.00 p.m. and VOCATION FARM was seized. On information to this effect being conveyed to our left Company Commander he took two platoons and established a defensive flank between VENTURE and VOCATION Farms as arranged. In carrying out their operation on our left flank the 1st. Camerons were fortunate to fall upon an enemy relief and a large number of the enemy were dispersed by their fire. The greater part of these <del>passed</del> across our right front line Company which opened fire on them with rifles and Lewis Guns, apparently inflicting heavy casualties.</p>	b/s/h																		
	17TH/18TH			<p>On the night 17th/18th the Battalion was relieved by the 2nd. Battalion Rifle Brigade and the 1st. Camerons on our left by the 1st. Battalion, The Black Watch. Owing to the great congestion of troops on the GRAVENSTAFEL Road, the only means of access from the front line in this area, and the heavy shelling of this road and the whole of the front and support areas, the relief was much drawn out, lasting from shortly after dusk until 1.40 p.m. Upon relief the Battalion moved to SAVILE Camp near YPRES. During this tour the shelling of our Support Companies, of the Gravenstafel Road, Battalion H. Co., and Company H. Co. at MOSSELMARKT, and of all the forward area was intense, and numerous casualties were received as a result including the following Officer casualties:</p> <table> <tr> <td>Lieut. L. C. Montgomery</td> <td>-</td> <td>Wounded, not seriously</td> </tr> <tr> <td>" W. Webb,</td> <td>-</td> <td>"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>" H. S. Fry,</td> <td>-</td> <td>seriously, but not dangerously</td> </tr> <tr> <td>" J. D. Macleod,</td> <td>-</td> <td>Not seriously</td> </tr> <tr> <td>" H. L. Hoyle,</td> <td>-</td> <td>Slightly</td> </tr> <tr> <td>" D. B. Gilmour,</td> <td>-</td> <td>"</td> </tr> </table>	Lieut. L. C. Montgomery	-	Wounded, not seriously	" W. Webb,	-	"	" H. S. Fry,	-	seriously, but not dangerously	" J. D. Macleod,	-	Not seriously	" H. L. Hoyle,	-	Slightly	" D. B. Gilmour,	-	"	b/s/h
Lieut. L. C. Montgomery	-	Wounded, not seriously																					
" W. Webb,	-	"																					
" H. S. Fry,	-	seriously, but not dangerously																					
" J. D. Macleod,	-	Not seriously																					
" H. L. Hoyle,	-	Slightly																					
" D. B. Gilmour,	-	"																					
				<p>419239 C. S. M. G. W. Kennedy, DCM, MM, died of wounds 16.11.17, received at PASSCHENDAELE on the night of the 15th. This N.C.O. has been Company Sergeant Major of D Company since <del>the Battalion was originally formed</del>. He was awarded both the D.C.M. and .M.M.</p>	b/s/h																		
				25 Feb. 1916.																			



## WAR DIARY

or

42nd Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2113.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Sheet 11	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and References to Appendix
	19 17				
	NOVEMBER 17TH/18TH.			Total casualties for the tour were as follows/ OFFICERS/ Killed 0 Died of wounds 0 Wounded 6 N. C. Os. / Killed 0 Died of wounds 2 Wounded 9 O. R. / Killed 12 Died of Wounds 5 Wounded 66 Missing believed prisoner 1	GSW. GSW.
	18TH.			The Battalion remained at SAVILE Camp.	
	19TH.			The Battalion moved by Route March to the Asylum-Kruistraat Road where with the rest of the Brigade (less the 49th Battalion) and the 116th Battalion it embussed and proceeded to ST. VENANT Area. Battalion Transport with rest of Brigade Transport moving by Route March. The Battalion was billeted in and about HAVERSKERQUE. The billets in this area were exceptionally good. The Battalion remained the night of the 19th/20th at Haverskerque.	GSW. GSW.
	20TH.			Lieut. V. E. Hobart was appointed Actg. O. C. A Company. The Battalion, with Transport, moved by Route March from HAVERSKERQUE to BOURECQ via BUSNES and LILLERS, reaching BOURECQ about 2.30 p.m., where the Battalion went into billets. For the rest of the month the Battalion stayed at BOURECQ where it was re-equipped re-clothed and intensive daily training was carried on.	GSW. GSW.
	21ST.			The following Officers reported to the Battalion and were posted to Companies as follows: To/ <u>A Company</u> <u>B Company</u> <u>C Company</u> Lieut. A. S. Scott,                      Lieut. R. P. Stafford,                      Lieut. W. J. M. Kavanagh, "                      L. P. Benskin, "                      A. E. Worley, <u>D Company</u> Lieut. R. Fuller	GSW.
				146 O. R. reinforcements arrived and were taken on strength and posted among the Companies to fill vacancies caused by casualties.	GSW.

## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence  
Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II  
and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages  
will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Sheet 12	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	1917				
	NOVEMBER 23RD.			Recreation Rooms for O.R. of the Battalion were opened in the village of BOURECO	6364
	24TH.			Following Officers reported: Lieut. A. Wilson, posted to D Company " A. E. Andrews, " " A " " W. H. Molson, " " B "	6364 6364
	26TH.			Lieut. T. West reported from hospital and returned to duty with A Company.	
	28TH.			Lieut. J. R. Adridge reported to Battalion from hospital in England and was appointed Bombing Officer. Lieut. J. B. T. Montgomerie, reported to Battalion and was posted to A Company " A. B. Proven, reported to Battalion and was posted to C "	
				Lieut. H. M. Scott was attached to the Battalion from the 38th Canadian Battalion and appointed Actg. Transport Officer.	6364
	29TH.			Advice of the following decorations having been awarded was received:  <u>BAR TO THE MILITARY MEDAL</u> 133315 L/Cpl. Combs, M.R.  <u>THE MILITARY MEDAL</u> 239787 Pte. Rintoul, J. (Since died of wounds) 283479 Pte. Gould, W. D. 441713 " Skillicie, A. 133266 " Gater, A.P. 901771 " Mason, A.W. 418130 C/M.S. Wakeling, G. 418624 " Lovaridge, T. A. 418773 Pte. Murphy, J. B. 136045 Sgt. Hammond, E. A. 444612 A/L/C Symonds, F. 132241 " Smith, G. 418415 L/Cpl. Johnston, R.R.	6364 6364
				The Battalion attended the P.P.C.L.I. Concert Party performance at ST. HILIARE which was much enjoyed.	6364 6364

## WAR DIARY

or

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY

(Brevé heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Sheet 13 Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
NOVEMBER 30TH.			<p>The Battalion, pursuant to a request received some time prior from the 1st. Battalion of Imperial Black Watch, adopted the Red Hackle as part of its head-dress.</p> <p>The shield presented by Major General Lipssett for the best Rifle Grenade team at the Canadian Corps Rifle Meet, and won by No. 5 Platoon "B" Coy., was received, made from a German shell and mounted on wood from the door of the Town Hall, LIEWIN.</p> <p>During Passchendaele Operations the Battalion Sniping Section suffered very very severely. No. 428819 Pte. Holsa, G.L. No. 193240 Pte. McGregor A. and 145425 Pte. Farmer, A.S. -were killed. 418153 L/C. McLeod K.K. Died of Wounds, and 418417 Pte. Balman C. and 192414 Pte. Pearce, H.J. were wounded.</p> <p>418153 L/C. McLeod, who died of wounds received on November 3rd, came out with the Battalion to France. He was wounded in the operations on the SOMME and returned to the Battalion 10.4.17. At the time he was fatally wounded, he was in charge of the Bn. Sniping Section, and throughout his career had rendered service of an outstanding order. His death is deeply mourned by all.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Honourworthy</i> Majdr, Cndg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.</p>	<p>BSM</p> <p>BSM</p> <p>BSM</p>

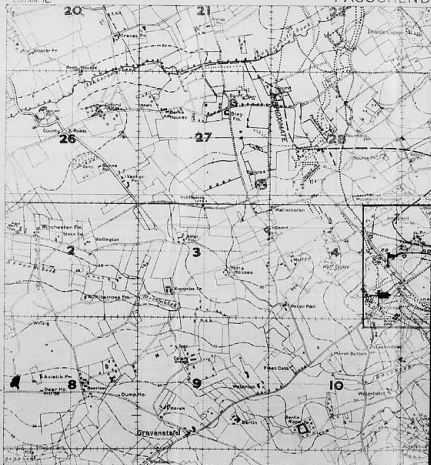
M A P (APPENDIX 1.)

42ND CANADIAN INFANTRY BATTALION

NOVEMBER 1917



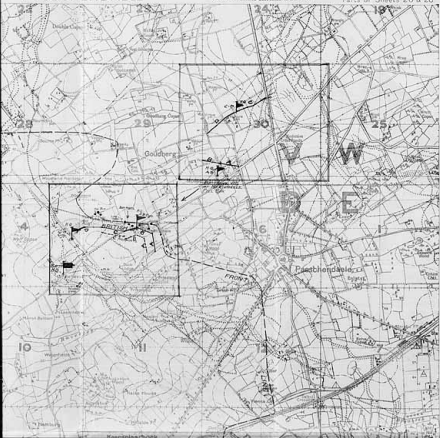




# PASSCHENDAELE

German Trenches Correlated to 24-10-17.

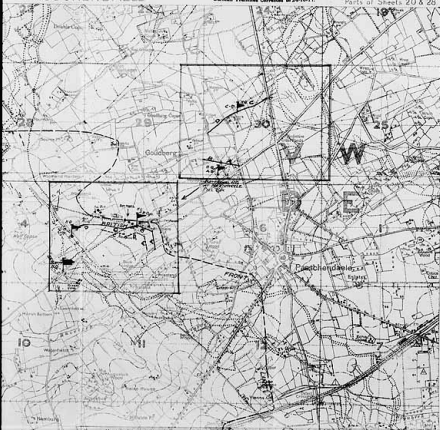
Parts of Sheets 20 & 26

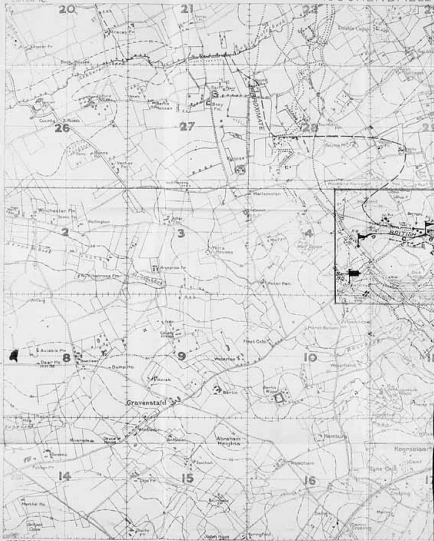


# PASSCHENDAELE

German Trenches Corrected to 26-10-17.

Parts of Sheets 20 & 28







Appendix I

A-108

Appendix I

A

Appendix 2.

OPERATION ORDER NO 151  
BY

SECRET.  
Copy No. 10000

Lt Col, Col. B. J. Clements, D.C.O.  
Command, 42nd Canadian Battalion, IBC.

Re: ~~XXXXXX~~ Sheet No. 1/46,000  
IAS/CHEM/D/L/S.

NOVEMBER 12th 1917.

1. INFORMATION. On the night 14/15th November the 7th Can. Inf. Bde (less 49th Bn) and 116th Bn, will move from the BELTJE-ST JAN Area and relieve the 9th Can. Inf. Bde, in the line. The R.C.R. relieve the 58th Bn., in the front line right sub-sector.

2. INTELLIGENCE. The 42nd Can. Bn., will relieve the 52nd Can. Bn., in the front and support lines, left sub-sections  
"0" on the right - front line  
"0" on the left - front line.  
"A" on the right - support line  
"B" on the left - support line.

3. ADVANCE PARTIES. Advance parties of 1 Officer and 4 O.R. per company will go into the line on the night 13/14th Nov., and will report to the 9th Can. Inf. Bde, H.Q., on the afternoon of the 13th Nov., where guides will be supplied to take them forward.

4. GUIDES. The 9th Can. Inf. Bde., will furnish guides at the rate of two per platoon and 1 for H.Q. These guides will rendezvous at WITTELDOO at 5 p.m. and will be met by Lt. LeSueur 7th Can. Inf. Bde., and by Lieut. Fleming of this unit.

5. ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENT, ETC. The Battalion will carry into the line the following additional rations, tools, etc. attached hereto:

- 3 Sandbags per man.
- 25 shovels per company.
- 7 Rifle Grenades per Rifle-prom. fire.
- 1 Rifle Grenade per man (except Rifle Grenades and Le Sueur's Gunners).
- 35 S.G.S. Rifle Grenades No. 62 per Battalion.
- 48 hours rations per man.

(b) The Battalions of the 9th Can. Inf. Bde., will on relief hand over all S.A.A. with the exception of 35 rounds per man.

6. ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS. re Aid Post., attached hereto.

7. ADVANCE THE CAPITOL

8. BATTALION NO. 1027/CHM/LB.

9. RESULTS. Completion of relief will be reported to C-in-C., by wire if available using code phrase "Your O.O. 151 received at.....". This is to be confirmed by runner immediately.

- |                        |                     |                    |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 7th Can. Inf. Bde.  | 9. Sig. Officer.    | R.L.H.R. IBC. H.Q. |
| 2. 52nd Can. Inf. Bde. | 10. Int. Officer    | Major/Ajst         |
| 3. C.O.                | 11. Trans. Officer. |                    |
| 4. O.C. "A" Coy,       | 12. S.S. Lt.        |                    |
| 5. O.C. "B" "          | 13. P.O.            |                    |
| 6. O.C. "C" "          | 14. File            |                    |
| 7. O.C. "D" "          | 15/16 War Diary.    |                    |
8. Bedding Officer.

SECRET

OPERATION ORDER - No 152

By

Lieut Colonel B. McLennan, DSO.  
Cdg. 42nd Cdn Bn. R.H.C

Nov 17th 1917

- 1 INFORMATION      Battalion will be relieved by the 2nd Battalion Rifle Brigade on night of 17/18th November 1917 and move to SAVILLE CAMP
- 2 INTENTION      Proposed Order of relief
- |                         |             |           |
|-------------------------|-------------|-----------|
| D. Coy 2nd R.B. relieve | C Coy. 42nd | R Front   |
| C " " "                 | D " "       | L "       |
| B " " "                 | A " "       | R Support |
| A " " "                 | B " "       | L "       |
- 3 GUIDES      Guides report to Lieut Fleming at WATERLOO as arranged
- 4 TOOLS & S.A.A.      Tools and S.A.A. on the men except 25 rounds per man will be handed over. Extra water bottles and all other equipment will be brought out.
- 6 REPORT      Report of relief by runner to Battalion Headquarters

R"LE"EWING M.C.  
Major & Adjutant.

- P.S.      Route suggested Road over GRAFENSTAPEL RIDGE thence by Track 6      Men will be posted to guide to Track 6
- Lewis Guns will be carried out to camp.



## OPERATION ORDER NO. 153

By  
Lieut. Col. B. McLennan, D.S.O.  
Cdq. 48th Canadian Battalion, RMC.

SUNDAY, NOVEMBER 17TH, 1917

1. INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade will move to the ST. VERANT Area on October 19th.
2. ROUTINE Reveille----- 6.00 a.m.  
Breakfast----- 6.30 "
3. INTENTION The 48th Canadian Battalion will form part of Convoy 1, and will fall in on the SAVILE ROAD- I.S.d.95.95 to I.S.d.90.95, ready to move off, at 7.45 a.m. facing SAVILE CAMP. Headquarters on the right.  
Battalion will move by road to ASYLUM-KRUISTRAAT ROAD (H.18.d.9.6. to H.18.d.3.4.) where it will embark as part of Convoy 1.  
Bn. will move by bus from KRUISTRAAT ROAD to ST. VERANT Area, and will be billeted at HAVERSKERQUE.
4. DRESS Heavy Marching Order. Greatcoats and Steel Helmets will be worn. Box Respirators at the alert. Balmorals to be carried in pockets
5. RATIONS Unexpended portion of the days rations will be carried on the men, and it is suggested that Officers will carry their luncheons with them.
6. COMPANY EMBUSSING STATES will be at Orderly Room by 7.00 am.
7. OFFICERS' KITS ETC. Dixies, Officers' Kits, Mess Boxes, Lewis Guns and packs of casualties will be piled on the road side on SAVILE ROAD, near Quartermaster's Stores, at 7.15 a.m.
8. LOADING PARTY Batta. Sergeant Major will detail one M.C.O. and a Party to load articles mentioned in paragraph 7 on lorry.
9. LORRY GUIDES Battalion Sergeant Major will detail two guides to report at GOLDFISH CHATEAU H.11.combral at 4.30 a.m. to Brigade representative, to guide lorry to loading point.
10. ORDER OF EMBUSSING Battalions will be formed up two deep along each side of the ASYLUM KRUISTRAAT ROAD in the following order relative to Convoy-1  
7th Cdn. Inf. Bde. H.Q.  
R.C.R.  
P.P.C.L.I., 42nd S.  
1 COMPANY 116th Bn.  
7th T.H. Battery  
Head of R.C.R. at H.18.d.9.6.
11. EMBUSSING STATE Lieut. Fleming will report to Capt. Wilby, Officer i/c Embussing, with an embussing state at 9.40 a.m. at H.18.d.9.6.

R.L.H. EWING, MC.

COPIES TO/ 1 Brigade Major/Adjutant  
2 C.O. 3 Bombing Officer  
3. O.C. A Coy. 4 B.S.M.  
4 O.C. B " 10 HQMS  
5 O.C. C " 11 to 13 War Diary  
6 O.C. D " 14 File  
7. H.O.

## OPERATION ORDER 154

By

Lieut. Col. B. McLennan DSO.

Cmdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, RHC.

Map Ref. 36 A 1/40, 080

Monday, Nov. 19th, 1917

1. INFORMATION The 7th Canadian Inf. Brigade Group will move with Transport on the 20th, from ST. VENANT Area to ST. HILAIRE Area.
2. INTENTION The 42nd. Canadian Bn. will move with Transport from HAVERSKERQUE to BOURECQ by road on 20th instant.
3. ROUTINE Routine for the 20th November  
 REVEILLE----- 6.00 a.m.  
 BREAKFAST----- 6.30 "
4. BRIGADE STARTING POINT P. 3. d. 8. 0. (First road junction west of St. Venant, 159 yds. north of Railway track).
5. BATTN. ASSEMBLING POINT J. 27. b. 8. 2. (Road Junction in HAVERSKERQUE immediately north of Battalion Headquarters)
6. ASSEMBLY HOUR The Battalion, (less A & B Coys who will join opposite their Billets) will fall in ready to move off at 8.30 a.m. in the following order.  
 HEADQUARTERS - A - B - C - D  
 Head of column at starting point.
8. TRANSPORT Transport will be parked with field kitchens in rear of Battalion at 8.25 a.m.
9. PIPERS Pipers will fall in at Assembly point at 8.00 a.m. and play till 8.30 a.m. and will report to their respective companies when the Battalion is assembled.
10. DRESS Battle Order, with Steel Helmets on haversacks. Greatcoats in banderole.
11. ROUTE Via BUSNES, LILLERS to BOURECQ.
12. MARCH DISCIPLINE 200 yards interval between Companies and at least 500 yards between Units.  
 The following halts will be made:  
 From 25 to 30 minutes after the hour.  
 From 50 to 60 minutes after the hour,  
 and from 12.15 to 1.15 p.m.
14. RATIONS Unexpended portion of the days rations will be carried on the men.
15. TEA Tea will be issued from Field Kitchens from 12.15 to 1.15pm. Headquarters will draw tea from A Company's Kitchen.
15. OFFICERS KITS etc. Officers Kits, Mess Boxes, Orderly Room Boxes and casualties packs will be piled on the road side in front of Company Headquarters and Battalion Headquarters at 7.15 a.m., and will be carried in Second Army lorry. Mess packs will be piled in separate piles at the same points by 7.15 a.m. and will be carried in a special lorry making two trips. First trip carrying packs of C and D Coys. 2nd trip carrying packs of A & B Coys. and Headquarters. A guard will be placed over the packs of A & B Companies and Headquarters until same are removed by lorry.
16. ADVANCE PARTY Lieut. Turner, 1 senior N.C.O. from A Company, Sergt. Foster from Headquarters, and C. Q.M. Sgts. B.C. and D Coys. will proceed as an advance party to 7th Cdn. T.M. Battery leaving HAVERSKERQUE at 8.00 a.m. They will report to the officer i/c 7th T.M. Battery at J. 27. b. 8. 2. (road junction in HAVERSKERQUE, immediately north of Bn. H.Q.) at 7.15 a.m.

17

BILLETS

Company Commanders and B.S.M. will see that billets occupied by their personnel are left clean and will send in a clearance certificate to Orderly Room by 8.15 a.m.

18

MARCHING  
OUT STATE

Marching Out state will be at the Orderly Room by 7.30 a.m.

R. L. E. KWING, MC.

Major/Ajutant

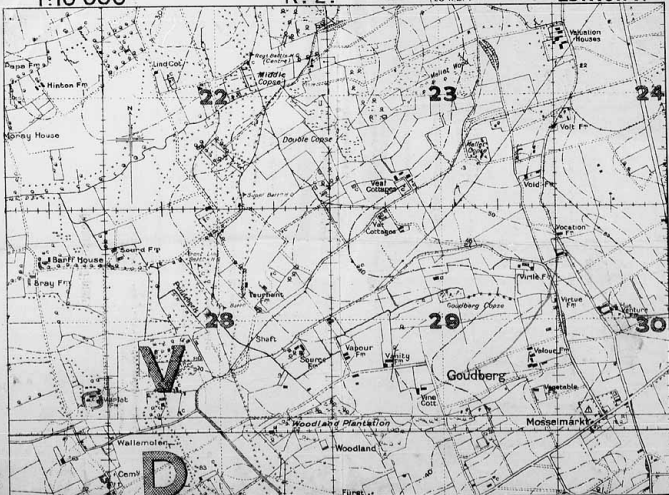
COPIES TO/ 1 7th C.I.R.  
2 C.O.  
3 O.C. A Coy.  
4 O.C. B "  
5 O.C. C "  
6 O.C. D "  
7 M.O.  
8 B.S.M.  
9. T.O.  
10. Bombing Officer  
11 Scout Officer  
12 B.Q.M.S.  
13-15 War Diary  
16 File.

1:10 000

R. 2.

Parts of 20 S.E. 3  
28 N.E. 1

EDITION I.



*W. J. ...*

Handwritten notes:  
Hq  
try  
to do  
Mark

# Message Form.

.....Division.

Map reference or mark own position on Map at back.

1. I am at.....
2. I am at.....and am consolidating.
3. I am at.....and have consolidated.
4. Am held up at.....by M.O. at.....
5. I need --Ammunition.  
Bombs.  
Rifle Grenades.  
Water.  
Very lights.  
Stokes shells.
6. Enemy forming up for counter-attack at.....
7. Enemy withdrawing at.....
8. I am in touch with.....on <sup>Right</sup>  
<sub>Left</sub> at.....
9. I am not in touch on <sup>Right</sup>  
<sub>Left</sub>.
10. I estimate my present strength at.....rifles.
11. Hostile 

(Battery	) active at.....
Machine Gun	
Trench Mortar	

Time.....a.m. (p.m.)

Name.....

Date.....

Platoon..... Company.....

Battalion.....



16/11/47

Adj. 2<sup>nd</sup> Bn. P. B. Co.

Have not yet been able  
to obtain any definitive reports  
from 1st B. Battalion.

Party pushed down with  
five prisoners reported all  
objectives reached. Signal  
that "Vacation Farm" had  
been reached observed.

Unable to state if line  
has been held but a P. Coy  
of the 1st Bn. Co. stated  
that Sgt was about up from  
in front of final objective.  
Am trying to get information  
from "D" Coy 1st Bn. P. B. Co.  
H. J. Smith Capt.

Copy of 42nd St. Bldg



16/11/17

Hiaddy -

Have had no reports  
from C or D Coy relative  
to this morning's shoot but  
fragging from cases passing  
through dressing station were  
casualties were light.

J. D. Macleod  
DCA Coy

5<sup>th</sup> PM

17/11/17

The day -

We haven't received anything definite about our last night's show on our left. Mr Koffler says that the Cameroon has taken location house & D'Arcy has joined up with them on the left. The Cameroon claim to have run into a Bosche relief and cleared them up with Lewis guns.

J. D. Maccheron  
J. A. Coy

Origin and Service Instructions.	Words.	Charge.	This message is on a/c of ?	Date.....	
	Sent				..... Service.
	At.....m.				
To.....			From.....		
By.....			(Signature of "Franking Officer.")	By.....	

TO { OC 40th Batt Canadian Regt

Sender's Number. * <u>JR 21145</u>	Day of Month. <u>16th</u>	In reply to Number.	<b>AAA</b>
---------------------------------------	------------------------------	---------------------	------------

Unofficial reports lead me to believe that we have taken our objectives up to VOX and that a heavy counter attack was crushed by the barrage AAA. We have five prisoners so far AAA. Have you any information

From W/202 JV 1st Cameron Hvy

Place

Time 9-48 PM

The above may be forwarded as now corrected. **(Z)** J. Robertson Capt

Censor. Signature of Addressor or person authorised to telegraph in his name.

Nov-16-1917.

To Adj.  
42<sup>nd</sup> 13<sup>th</sup> / R.H.C.

D Company is back in  
trenches occupied previous  
to attack this evening. ~~by~~  
~~position on our left~~

No. 13. Platoon had dug  
in at position from V-30-a-40-20  
to V-30-a-30-25.

No. 14 Platoon was held in  
readiness to join from left of  
No. 13. to VOCTON FARM.

On learning that farm had  
not been captured, we returned  
to our trenches.

Covering party of CAMERONS  
on right which No. 14 Platoon  
were to relieve caught a

German Company which appeared to have lost its way in relieving and killed or wounded the whole party with the exception of five prisoners captured.

According to Lieut. Hunter of CAMERONS, attacking platoon actually captured VUCAATION FARM but were driven out by a swift counter attack. AAA

Walpoffler  
Capt

10-00 p.m.

O.C. 10-00

Nov. 17<sup>th</sup> - 1917.

To Adj.

42<sup>nd</sup> B<sup>n</sup> / R.H.C.

Lieut. Hunter, 1<sup>st</sup> Cameron, reported that we held VOCA<sup>T</sup>ION FARM at 11:00 p.m.

I immediately took two platoons and Hqs. L.G. and placed them between VENTURE FARM and VOCA<sup>T</sup>ION FARM to protect the right flank of CAMERONS AAA.

Walpaffley

1:10 a.m.

Capt  
O.C.D.C.

Ady  
Apr 22 1881

Nov. 16<sup>th</sup> 1917

To Adj.

42<sup>nd</sup> B<sup>y</sup> / R.H.C.

Signal when CAMERONS  
have captured VOCAATION  
FARM will be two white  
flares in succession. This  
signal will be repeated  
and relayed from VENTURE  
FARM. AAA

4.40 p.m.

Walgraffery

Capt.

O. C. W. Co



CONFIDENTIAL.

WAR DIARY.

-----000-----

-:- OF -:-

*46<sup>nd</sup>*

CANADIAN BATTALION

*- 23<sup>rd</sup>*

CANADIAN DIVISION.

FROM 1<sup>st</sup> December

TO 31<sup>st</sup> December 1917

-----000-----

VOLUME 27

With appendix "A"

A

27

Army Form C. 2118.

**WAR DIARY**

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs., Part II, and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

or  
**INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY:**

(Exact heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
			<p><i>Original</i></p> <p><b>WAR                    D I A R Y</b></p> <p>-----</p> <p>for the month of</p> <p><b>DECEMBER            1917.</b></p> <p>-----</p> <p><b>42ND. CANADIAN BATALION, R. H. C.</b></p> <p>-----</p>	

WAR DIARY

42nd Canadian Bn. 3rd Canadian Division,

from 1st to 31st December, 1917.

Volume 27.

Diary Text

4 Pages.

Appendix A.

Operation Order No. 155 dated the 20th December 3rd Cdn. Division will be relieved by 11th Divn. on December 23rd. 42nd Bn. will relieve 16th Bn. in Bde. support on night 23rd/24th, administrative instructions attached.

Operation Order No. 156 dated the 26th Dec. Inter-Bde relief on the 29th and 30th December, 42nd Bn. to relieve 49th.

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1917	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	<b>DECEMBER</b>			
	1st - 21st.		Battalion remained in billets at BOURECQ. During this period general and special training were carried on daily. This included Close and Extended Order Drill, Musketry, Gas Drill, Wiring, Tactical Exercises by night and day, Bombing and Rifle Grenade training with dummy and live Grenades, Lewis Gun training, 1st Aid training for Stretcher Bearers, etc. The Battalion was fortunate enough to have a 75 yard rifle range, a Lewis Gun range, and bombing and rifle grenade pits, and daily use was made of each of these. The Battalion was also allowed the use on two days of a rifle range near MUYH AUX BOIS - Sheet 36a, S. W. - T. 15. a.	
	1st.		The polling of the soldiers' votes for the Canadian General Elections commenced. Polls were opened, under a Presiding Officer and Poll Clerk, in Headquarters and the four companies. In the first day 709 votes were polled. The Polls were kept open until the 7th December and 791 votes in all were polled.	
	7th		Notification was received of the following decorations having been awarded in connection with the operations undertaken by the Battalion on the night 2nd./3rd. November, 1917 at PASSCHENDAELE.	
			<u>THE MILITARY CROSS</u> Capt. R. F. Studd, Lieut. R. McIntyre (since died of wounds) " D. B. Macaskill,	
			<u>THE DISTINGUISHED CONDUCT MEDAL.</u> 418451 C.S.M. Ackerley, P. 192830 Pta. (L/C.) Taylor, W.J.	
	8th.		Range practice was carried on all day at the ranges at T. 15. a. Each Company firing two practices at 300 yards. Prizes were awarded for the three best shots in the Battalion and the best shot in each Company.	
	9th.		Under instructions from the A.D.M.S., 3rd Cdn. Division, Capt. W. Hale, MC. ceased to be attached to the Battalion on proceeding to the 9th Field Ambulance. His departure was much regretted by all as he had been with the Battalion for twelve months and his services in the	

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

WAR DIARY

⇄ SHEET 2

INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Brass heading not required.)

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C. Army Form C. 2118.

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	1917			
	DECEMBER			
	9th Cont.		<p>interests of the Battalion were of the highest order. He was awarded the Military Cross for gallantry in connection with the capture of VIMY RIDGE on 9th April, 1917.            Capt. S. G. Mills (C.A.M.C.) reported to the Battalion as Medical Officer.</p>	
	11th.		<p>478001 R. S.M. Macfarlane, P.W. was seriously wounded by an enemy aerial bomb in BRUAY. His wounding at this time was particularly unfortunate as he was just about to proceed to England under the arrangements providing for a three months exchange of Warrent Officers and N. C.Os. with the 20th Reserve Battalion.</p>	KSA
	12th		<p>A Transport Competition was held Class 1. Best team of horses and harness. Horses to be judges in grooming and shoeing - Harness in cleanness and repairs. 3 prizes:            1st. Prize Fr. 25. won by 438433 Pte. Stalker, M.            2nd. Prize 15. " 438552 " Cooke, A. F.            3rd. Prize 10. " 438732 " Heath, J.            Class 2. Grooms horses. Best pair. Horses to be judges in grooming and shoeing. Saddlery in cleanness and repair.            One prize Fr. 15. won by 427825 Pte. Lawrie, G. S.            Class 3. Grooms horses. Best Single. Conditions and prize as in Class 2.            won by 43874 L/C. Leith, H. D. A.</p>	KSA
	18TH.		<p>Battalion carried out range practice from dawn to dusk. Two practices being fired by each Company at 300 yards.</p>	KSA
			<p>On December 14th Battalion received orders that Brigade would relieve the 6th Canadian Infantry Brigade, 2nd. Division, in the line in front of ACHEVILLE, and that the Battalion would relieve the 19th Canadian Infantry Battalion in Reserve at NEUVILLE ST. VAAST. The Battalion received instructions to move on the morning of the 18th by buses to NEUVILLE ST. VAAST and take over the accommodation occupied by the 19th Battalion. On the night of the 16th December, however, orders were received cancelling the previous orders and instructing the Battalion to remain in the BOURECQ Area until further orders.</p>	KSA
	21st.		<p>The Battalion subsequently received orders to move by bus on the 21st. December</p>	KSA

WAR DIARY  
SHEET 3

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. E. C. Army Form 'C. 2118.

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in F. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

~~INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.~~

(Erase heading not required.)

Place	Date 1947	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
DECEMBER 21st Cont.			<p>from BOURECQ, Sheet 36a, S. W. - U.7.b. to POSSE 10 Sheet 36b. - R. 3.c. and R. 8.a. and b., the Transport to move by road to the same place. The Transport moved accordingly, and the Battalion proceeded to the embussing point, namely, the road running N. E. through T. 11.a. (Sheet 36a, S. W.), arriving there at 12. noon. The bus convoy, however, failed to appear and at 4.30pm. the Commanding Officer made arrangements with Division to obtain rations for the following day and to billet the Battalion in FONTES - Sheet 36a, S. W. N. 29.a. and b., about two kilometres distance from the embussing point. The Battalion accordingly proceeded by route march to FONTES where it billeted for the night in comfortable billets.</p>	<p>13/A</p>
22nd.			<p>Busses were obtained by 10.15 a.m. and the Battalion proceeded by Bus to POSSE 10, where it was quartered in billets.</p>	<p>13/A</p>
23rd			<p>Battalion relieved 16th Canadian Battalion at LIEVIN in Brigade Support. Battalion proceeded by route march to AIX NOULETTE and thence by Corps Light Railway to LIEVIN detraining within a few hundred yards of the cellars and dugouts provided for the personnel.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Battalion Headquarters at N. 23. c. 30.36  A Company " " N. 23. b. 30.95  D " " " N. 22. d. 55. 10  B " " " N. 22. d. 90. 25  C " " " N. 22. d. 90. 25</p>	<p>13/A</p>
28th			<p>In this situation the Battalion was in very comfortable quarters, there being ample cellar accommodation for all ranks and a large supply of coal and wood to be found in the village. The carriage of rations and other supplies was very easy owing to the existence of the Corps Light Railway, and the fact that the railway dump was within a few hundred yards of each Company H. Q.</p> <p>During this tour in Support 13 platoons were employed each night as working parties, the principle work being wiring of the BLUE LINE or resistance line.</p> <p>Major S. C. Norworthy, DSO, MC, the Second in Command of the Battalion, was attached to 7th Canadian Infantry Brigade Headquarters.</p>	<p>13/A 14/A</p>

## WAR DIARY

42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.

Army Form C. 2118.

SHEET 4

Instructions regarding War Diaries and Intelligence Summaries are contained in P. S. Regs. Part II and the Staff Manual respectively. Title pages will be prepared in manuscript.

## INTELLIGENCE SUMMARY.

(Erases heading not required.)

Place	Date	Hour	Summary of Events and Information	Remarks and references to Appendices
	1917			
	DECEMBER			
	29th		<p>On the night of 29th/30th December the Battalion relieved the 49th Battalion in the left sector front line.</p> <p>C COMPANY - Right Front            D " - Left Front            B " - Support            A " - Reserve.</p> <p>43rd. Canadian Battalion on left flank. The Royal Canadian Regiment on right.</p> <p>An active programme of work was undertaken to provide accommodation in BLUE Trench i. e., ODW and ALARM Trenches, and the garrison redistributed.</p> <p>29th/30th. The enemy projected gas with an artillery and Trench Mortar bombardment on the Battalion on our left flank at 4.30 a.m. Some men of the Battalion were slightly gassed but none had to leave the line. - During the night enemy Heavy and Medium Trench Mortars showed considerable activity. The enemy was very alert with Machine Gun fire on Right Company's Outposts.</p>	
	30th		<p>Captain R. F. Studd, M.C. proceeded to Ferfay to take command of the 42nd Battalion Company of the 7th C.I.B. Training Battalion, C.C.R.C.</p>	
	31st.		<p>Lieut. A. E. Worley was injured by falling into a trench and evacuated to hospital.</p> <p>Major Herbert Molson, M.C., formerly a Company commander, who was wounded at Ypres June 2nd, 1916 visited the Battalion in the line.</p>	
			<p style="text-align: right;"><i>Dustin W. Leman</i>            Lieut. Colonel,            Cdg. 42nd. Canadian Battalion, R. H. C.</p>	

SECRET

"A"

OPERATION ORDER No. 155 COPY NO. 14

By

Major S. C. Hargreavy, D.S.O.M.C.  
Csqd. 42nd. Canadian Battalion.  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

REFERENCE MAPS

- 6a 1/10,000
- 6b 1/10,000
- 6c 1/10,000
- 6HS 1/10,000

THURSDAY, DECEMBER 20TH, 1917

INFORMATION

3rd. Canadian Inf. Division has been ordered to relieve the 11th Division by 6.00 a.m. 23rd December, and the left Brigade of 1st Canadian Division by 6 a.m. 24th December.

7th Canadian Inf. Brigade will relieve 3rd. Canadian Inf. Brigade in the line LENS Section, relief to be completed on the night 23rd/24th December 1917.

ATTENTION

The Battalion will relieve the 16th Canadian Battalion at LIEVIN in Brigade Support, on the night 23rd/24th December, 1917.

MOVES

(a) Personnel will move by bus from BOURECO to POSSE 10 on December 21st., move to be in accordance with Administrative Instructions

(b) Transport will move by road on 21st. December to lines in POSSE 10. Transport will move independently of other Units in the Brigade. At least 500 yards interval will be maintained between Transport Units. Transport will move as a Unit maintaining march discipline and formation and prescribed halts. Halts will not be made in villages.

BATTALION

HEADQUARTERS

In POSSE 10 at billet No. to be notified later.  
In Support at H.23.c.30.39

ADMINISTRATIVE  
ARRANGEMENTS

In accordance with Administrative Instructions issued herewith.

R. L. H. SWING,

Major/Lieutenant

- COPY NO. 1 Brigade H.Q.
- 2 16th Cdb. Bn.
- 3 C.C.
- 4 O.C. A Company
- 5 O.C. B "
- 6 O.C. C "
- 7 O.C. D "
- 8 H.Q.
- 9 T.O.
- 10 Bombing Officer
- 11 Scout Officer
- 12 Quartermaster
- 13 B.S.M.
- 14-16 War Diary
- 17 F.A.O.
- 18. Signal Off



SECRET

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS ISSUED IN CONNECTION  
WITH OPERATION ORDER NO. 155

Copy No. 14.

1. SUTTERY

DECEMBER 31st 1917

Reveille.....6.15 a.m.  
Breakfast.....6.45 "  
Lunch.....at an hour to be notified  
later.  
Hour of embussing - to be notified later,

Personnel will move by bus on the 31st inst., em-  
bussing on road running N.S. through T.11.a. (Sheet 36a).

3. EMBUSSING  
STATE.

Embussing state. Will be handed into Orderly Room  
an hour and a half before embussing,

4. PARADE.

The Battalion will parade one hour before embussing  
hour on Main Street, BOURSCQ, in column of route, head of column  
opposite Headquarters Mess.

5. DRESS.

Heavy Marching Order with greatcoats, steel helmets on  
pack, one blanket in pack and one rolled in waterproof~~XXX~~  
sheet found pack, ends down.

6. RATIONS.

Unexpended portion of days rations will be carried.

7. OFFICERS KITS,  
MESS BOXES, ORDERLY  
ROOM BOXES, etc.

Officers Kits, Mess Boxes, Orderly Room Boxes, etc.,  
will be piled by 8.45 a.m. in Main Street oppoite  
Q.R. Stores by Coy., and Ho., and guard placed over  
each pile.

8. KITCHENS.

Field Kitchens will be cleaned and ready to be delivered  
to Transport Officer by 7.45 a.m. Have vary number of dices  
to be left out as arranged with the Sergeant Cook.

9. INSPECTION  
OF BILLETS.

Billets will be cleaned, free of men and ready for  
inspection an hour and a half before embussing,

- |           |       |                  |
|-----------|-------|------------------|
| Copy. No. | 1.    | Brigade H.Q.     |
|           | 2.    | 16th Cdn. Bn.    |
|           | 3.    | C.O.             |
|           | 4.    | C.C. "A" Coy.    |
|           | 5.    | C.C. "B" "       |
|           | 6.    | C.C. "C" "       |
|           | 7.    | C.C. "D" "       |
|           | 8.    | C.O.             |
|           | 9.    | T.O.             |
|           | 10.   | Bombing Officer. |
|           | 11.   | Scout Officer.   |
|           | 12.   | Quartermaster.   |
|           | 13.   | B.S.M.           |
|           | 14-16 | M.R. Battery.    |
|           | 17.   | File.            |
|           | 18.   | Signal Officer.  |

R.L.H. BALEG.  
Major/Ltjt.

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS NO. 3  
in connection with  
BATTALION OPERATION ORDER NO. 155  
by  
Lt. Col. E. McLennan, D.S.O.,  
Cmdg. 13th Canadian Battalion,  
5th Royal Highlanders of Canada.

MAP REFERENCE  
LENS 1/10,000

DECEMBER 9<sup>TH</sup>, 1917

- 1. INTENTION** Battalion will proceed on December 9<sup>TH</sup> by Route March from FOSSE 10 to AIX-BOULETTE, and by Light Railway from AIX-BOULETTE to AUSTRALIAN SIDING (H.23.d. central). Light Railway trucks hold 30 men with full equipment each.
- 2. MARCH** The Battalion will fall in, ready to move off, at 8.55 a.m. Headquarters and 1 Company in the side street adjoining their billets; B, C, & D Companies in their respective side streets adjoining their billets. Head of each column at junction of side street and main road.  
4 Lewis Gun Crews will be at the head of each Company until entrainment.  
Order of March/HQ. - A - B - C - D. B, C, and D Companies will join the column as it passes ahead of their respective side streets.
- 3. DRESS** Heavy Marching Order - Gaiters and Steel Helmets will be worn.  
2 blankets per man will be carried - one in pack, the other rolled in ground sheet and placed around pack ends down.
- 4. RAILWAY BAGGAGE** Following will be carried on the Light Railway in addition to personnel:  
(a) Lewis Gun and 30 carriers per gun.  
(b) Packs of Advanced Party  
(c) Company Dixies.  
(d) Officers' Mess Boxes.  
Cpl. Palmer will take charge of the Lewis Guns and carriers, and will issue Lewis Guns and carriers to Lewis Gun Crews at AIX-BOULETTE after which Lewis Gun Crews will report to their platoons.
- 5. OFFICERS' BED ROLLS ETC.** Officers' Bed Rolls (which must be reduced to a minimum) will be taken up in the evening by 1st. 11th Transport. They will be piled in a separate pile and distinctly marked outside Company H.Q. at 8.45 a.m.  
Packs of Advanced Party, Dixies, Officers' Mess Boxes will be piled and marked distinctly "For the trenches" outside Company H.Q. at 8.45 a.m., where they will be collected by limbers.
- 6. OFFICERS' SURPLUS KITS ETC.** Officers' surplus kits etc. will be piled outside Company H.Q. by 8.45 a.m. in a separate pile and marked distinctly "For C.M. Stores"
- 7. BILLETS** Company Commanders will inspect and be responsible for the clean condition of their billets.
- 8. GUIDES** The Battalion will be met by guides from the Advanced Party at AUSTRALIAN SIDING.
- 9. BATT. H.Q.** will be at H.23.e.30.35
- 10. REPORTS** Completion of roll call will be reported by use of the code phrase "Your O.O.155 received at " and will be confirmed by Runner.

R. L. S. BYING,  
Major/Adjutant

**SECRET**  
*War Diary*

OPERATION ORDER NO. 106  
by  
Lieut. Col. S. Hofmann, D. S. O.  
Comdg., 4th Canadian Battalion,  
Royal Rifles of Canada.

FRIDAY 30th DECEMBER 1917.

1. INFORMATION. There will be an inter-Brigade relief on the night 29/30th December 1917.
2. INTERVIEW. The 4th Battalion will move from Brigade Support LIEVIN, and relieve the 4th Canadian Batta., E.R., in the front line, left subsection.
3. ORDER OF RELIEF.

"C" Coy., 4th	relieve	"A" Coy., 4th,	RIGHT FRONT.
"D" " "	"	" " " "	LEFT FRONT.
"B" " "	"	" " " "	SUPPORT.
"A" " "	"	" " " "	RESERVE.

under company arrangements.
4. ROUTES. Right Front Company via ABALON and ADMIRAL C.T.'s Left Front Company via CROCODILE C.T.
5. TIME. Companies will move off under company arrangements immediately after rations have been distributed in the following order :-  
"C" "D" "B" "A".
6. ADVANCE PARTY. Advance Party of 1 Officer per Company and Sq., and at least 4 O.R. per company and 1 from Sq., will proceed to the line in the afternoon under company arrangements.
7. RATIONS. Rations will come up to the ration dump at rear of RAPPO CORNER and be carried in on the men.
8. WATER TINS. All tins issued to Companies and Sq., will be carried in full.
9. LEWIS GUNS. Under arrangements, Lewis Gun pieces will be exchanged and should be turned over to advance party early from the 4th Bn.
10. SIGNALS. Signals will relieve under arrangements of the S.O's concerned.
11. PACKS, SUR-PLUS KITS, ETC. OFFICERS  
will be stacked alongside rear of RAPPO CORNER (Ration Dump) by 4 p.m. to go down on ration train. "A" Coy., will furnish leading party of 1 M.C.O. and 10 men & will be responsible for posting a guard over same.
12. STORES. Receipts will be obtained for stores in the support area and a copy of the French Stores taken over, will be forwarded to Bn. Sq., as soon as possible not later than 8 a.m. on the morning of the 30th.
13. REPORTS. Completion of relief will be reported by 'phone using the code message "Your O.O. 106 received at " and to be confirmed by runner.
14. RE. HQ. Will be at COY TRENCH - M. 10. 3. 20. 10.

Copies to Hqs. 4th. Cdn. Bn. R. L. H. SWING.  
 C.O. O.C. A. Coy. Major/Adjt.  
 (S.O. O.C. B " "  
 1- (S.O. O.C. C " "  
 (I.O. O.C. D " "  
 H.O. File.  
 War Diary (3)